

Contents

A - Z

Owner's Handbook
for Vehicle



The Ultimate
Driving Machine



THE BMW 1 SERIES.

OWNER'S HANDBOOK.

BMW EfficientDynamics
Less emissions. More driving pleasure.

1 Series **Owner's Handbook**

Congratulations on your choice of a BMW.

The better you are acquainted with your car, the easier you will find driving it to be. We would therefore like to offer you the following advice:

Please read the Owner's Handbook before setting out in your new BMW. It contains important notes on how to operate the car, enabling you to derive maximum benefit from the technical advantages of your BMW. It also contains useful information which will help you to uphold both the car's operating safety and its full resale value.

Supplementary information is provided in the other documents of on-board literature.

We wish you a safe and enjoyable journey,

BMW AG

© 2013 Bayerische Motoren Werke
Aktiengesellschaft
Munich, Germany

Not to be reproduced, wholly or in part, without
written permission from BMW AG, Munich.

English II/13, 03 13 500

Printed on environmentally friendly paper,
bleached without chlorine, suitable for recycling.

Contents

The quickest way to locate specific subjects is to look for them in the detailed alphabetical index, see page 282.

4 Notes

Overview

- 10 Cockpit
- 18 iDrive
- 24 Voice control system

Controls

- 30 Opening and closing
- 47 Adjusting
- 56 Child safety
- 62 Driving
- 77 Everything under control
- 90 Technical features for driving comfort and safety
- 100 Lights
- 107 Climate control
- 112 Practical interior equipment

Driving hints

- 122 Driving precautions

Navigation

- 134 Navigation system
- 136 Destination input
- 146 Route guidance
- 154 What to do if ...

Entertainment

- 158 On/off and settings
- 161 Radio
- 165 Digital radio DAB, DAB/DMB
- 168 CD/DVD player
- 174 Music collection
- 180 External devices

Communication

- 190 Phone
- 203 Office
- 213 Contacts
- 215 ConnectedDrive
- 224 Advanced BMW Online services

Mobility

- 228 Refuelling
- 230 Wheels and tyres
- 237 Engine compartment
- 243 Maintenance
- 245 General care
- 249 Replacing parts
- 256 Mutual aid

Reference

- 264 Technical data
- 272 Short commands for the voice control system
- 279 Maintenance overview
- 282 From A-Z

Notes

About this Owner's Handbook

We have tried to make all the information in this Owner's Handbook easy to find. The quickest access to a specific topic or item is by consulting the detailed alphabetical index at the end. Consult the first chapter for an initial overview of your car.

When the time comes to sell your BMW, please remember to hand over this Owner's Handbook; it is an important part of the vehicle.

Updates after going to print

If any updates are made after the Owner's Handbooks have gone to print, these will be found in the appendix to the printed Quick Reference Guide for the vehicle.

Additional sources of information

If you have any queries, your Service Centre will be glad to advise you.

Information on BMW, e.g. on technical aspects, can also be found on the Internet on www.bmw.com.

Symbols used



Indicates precautions that must be followed precisely in order to avoid the possibility of personal injury and serious damage to the vehicle.



Indicates information that will assist you in gaining the optimum benefit from your vehicle and enable you to care more effectively for your vehicle.



Refers to measures that can be taken to help protect the environment.

◀ Marks the end of a specific item of information.

"..." Identifies texts on the control display for selecting functions.

)...< Identifies commands for the voice control system.

>>...<< Identifies replies by the voice control system.

Symbol for components and assemblies




Recommends that you study the relevant section of this Owner's Handbook in connection with a particular part or assembly.

Vehicle equipment

This Owner's Handbook describes all models and all standard equipment versions, national-market versions and optional equipment versions that are available in the series. As such, it includes descriptions and images of equipment that might not be available in your vehicle on account of the optional equipment selected, for example, or the national-market version.

This also applies for safety-relevant functions and systems.

Please refer to the Supplementary Owner's Handbook for information about equipment and models which are not described in this Owner's Handbook.

 In right-hand drive vehicles, some of the controls are arranged differently from those shown in the illustrations. ◀

Status at time of printing

The high safety and quality standards of BMW vehicles are maintained by unceasing development work on designs, equipment and accessories. In rare instances, your vehicle may therefore differ from the information supplied in the Owner's Handbook.

Updates after going to print

If any updates are made after the Owner's Handbooks have gone to print, these will be found in the appendix to the printed Quick Reference Guide for the vehicle.


For your own safety

The technical features of your car have been designed for compliance with the operating conditions and approval requirements prevailing in your country. In order to be able to use your car in another country, you may first need to have it adapted to the operating conditions and approval requirements prevailing in that


country, which can differ from those in your country.

Information on possible exclusion of warranty or warranty restrictions for your vehicle can be obtained from your BMW Service.

Maintenance and repair

 The advanced technology behind this car, for example the use of modern materials and high-performance electronics, means that specially adapted methods of maintenance and repair are required. Always have the necessary work on your BMW performed either by BMW Service or by a workshop that operates to BMW specifications and has suitably trained personnel. If such work is performed inexpertly, it could result in consequential damage and thus constitute a safety risk. ◀

Parts and accessories

 BMW recommends using parts and accessory products on this vehicle that are specifically approved for this purpose by BMW.

You are recommended to consult BMW Service for advice on Genuine BMW parts and accessories, other BMW approved products and competent advice on all related matters.

The safety and compatibility of these parts and products in conjunction with BMW vehicles have been checked by BMW. BMW accepts product liability for them.

BMW cannot accept liability for parts or accessory products of any kind which it has not approved.

BMW is unable to assess each individual product of outside origin as to its suitability for use on BMW vehicles without safety risk. This suitability cannot be guaranteed even if an official permit has been issued for the particular product in a specific country. Tests performed for such permits cannot always cover all operating conditions for BMW vehicles, and some of them therefore are insufficient. ◀

Data memory

Numerous electronic components on your vehicle contain data memories which save technical information, either temporarily or permanently, concerning the condition of the vehicle, events and faults. Generally speaking, this technical information documents the condition of a component, a module, a system or the environment:

- ▷ Operational conditions of system components, e.g. fluid levels.
- ▷ Status reports concerning the vehicle and its individual components, e.g. wheel rotations/speed, deceleration, lateral acceleration.
- ▷ Malfunctions and faults in important system components, e.g. lights and brakes.
- ▷ Reactions of the vehicle in specific driving situations, e.g. activation of airbags, stability control systems.
- ▷ Environmental conditions, e.g. temperature.

These data are of an exclusively technical nature and serve to identify and repair faults as well as to optimise vehicle functions. Movement profiles for distances covered cannot be established using these data. If Service Centre services are called on, e.g. for repair services, service processes, warranty cases, quality assurance, this technical information can be read by Service Centre employees, including those of the manufacturer, from the event and fault memories using special diagnosis tools. If necessary, further information can be obtained in this way. When a fault has been identified, the information is deleted from the fault memory or overwritten.

When using the vehicle, certain situations can be envisaged in which these technical data could be obtained in connection with other information, e.g. accident protocol, damage to the vehicle, witness statements etc. – where necessary in consultation with an accident assessor.

Additional functions contractually agreed with the customer, e.g. vehicle location in an emergency, allow certain vehicle data to be transmitted from the vehicle.



Overview

This summary of buttons, switches and displays serves as an initial guide.

In addition, it gives you an insight into the principles behind the various ways in which functions can be performed.

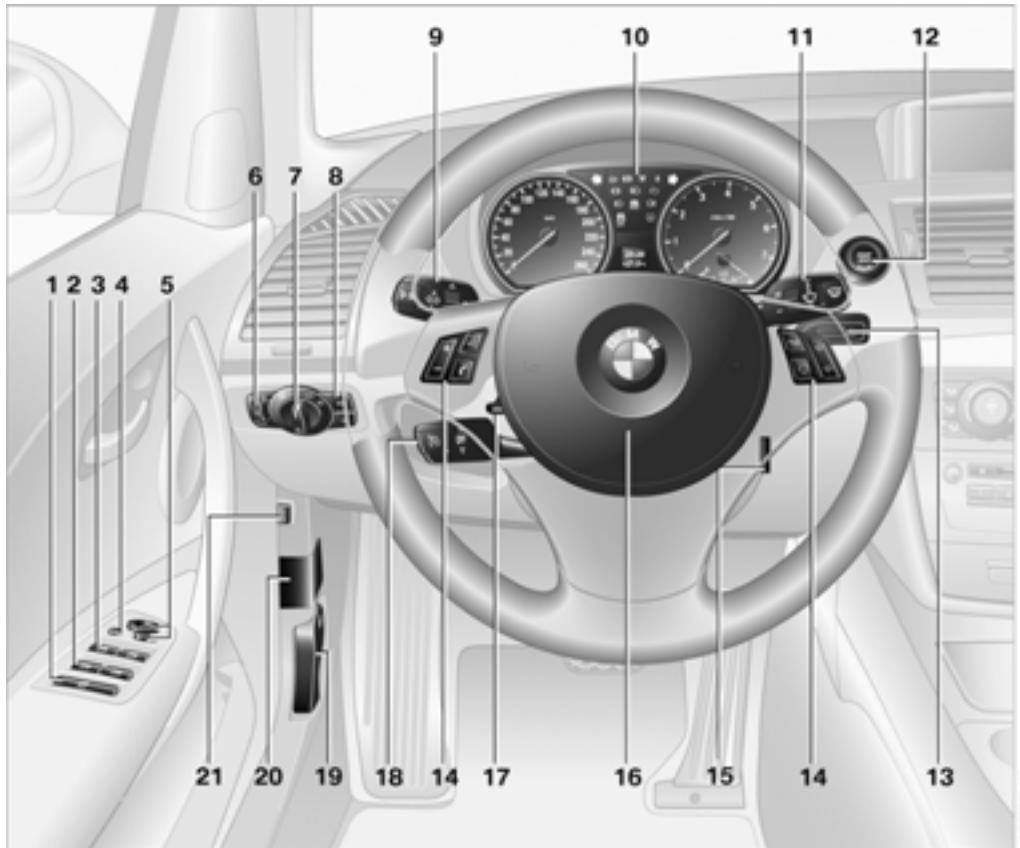
Cockpit































Vehicle equipment


This chapter describes all standard equipment, national market versions and optional equipment featured in the series. As such, it includes

descriptions of equipment that might not be available in a vehicle on account of the optional equipment selected, for example, or the national-market version. This also applies for safety-relevant functions and systems.

Around the steering wheel: controls and displays



- 1  Convertible: opening and closing windows together 40
- 2  Convertible: opening and closing rear side windows 40
- 3  Opening and closing front side windows 40
- 4 Exterior mirrors, folding in and out 53
- 5 Adjusting outside mirrors, parking position function 53
- 6  Headlight beam throw adjustment 102
- 7  Side lights 100
-  Low-beam headlights 101
-  Automatic driving lights control 100
-  Adaptive Headlights 102
-  High beam assistance 103
- 8  Fog lights 104
-  Rear fog lights 104
- 9  Flashing turn indicators 73
-  High-beam headlights/headlight flasher 103
-  High beam assistance 103
-  Parking lights 103
-  Computer 79
-  Settings and information about the vehicle 81
- 10 Instrument cluster 12
- 11  Windscreen wipers 73
-  Rain sensor 74
- 12  Switching the ignition on/off and starting/stopping the engine 62
- 13 Ignition lock 62
- 14 Buttons on the steering wheel
-  Telephone:
Receiving and ending a call; starting dialling for a selected phone number; redialling if no phone number is selected
Convertible: microphone on the steering column
-  +
Volume control
-  -
-  Activating/deactivating the voice control system 24
Convertible: microphone on the steering column
-  Changing the radio station
Interrupting a traffic report
-  Track selection
-  Browsing in the redial list
-  Next entertainment source
-  Recirculated-air mode 109
- 15  Heated steering wheel 55
- 16 Horn, entire surface
- 17 Adjusting the steering wheel 55

- 18  Cruise control [75](#)
- 19 Releasing the engine compartment lid [238](#)
- 20 ODB socket [244](#)
- 21 Opening the luggage area lid [35](#)

Instrument cluster



- 1 Speedometer
on 135i: with fuel gauge
- 2 Flashing turn indicators
- 3 Indicator and warning lamps [13](#)
- 4 Revolution counter [78](#)
- 5 Fuel gauge [78](#)
on 135i: engine oil temperature [78](#)
- 6 Display for
 - ▷ Clock [77](#)
 - ▷ Outside temperature [77](#)
 - ▷ Indicator and warning lamps [86](#)
- 7 Display for
 - ▷ Position of automatic gearbox [66](#)
 - ▷ Gear indicator, 7-gear sports automatic transmission with double clutch [68](#)
 - ▷ On-board computer [79](#)
 - ▷ Date of next scheduled service, and remaining driving distance [82](#)
 - ▷ Distance recorder – odometer – and trip distance recorder [77](#)
 - ▷ High beam assistance [103](#)
 - ▷ Checking engine oil level [239](#)
 - ▷ Settings and information [81](#)
 - ▷ Gearshift point display [80](#)
- 8 Resetting trip distance recorder [77](#)

Indicator and warning lamps

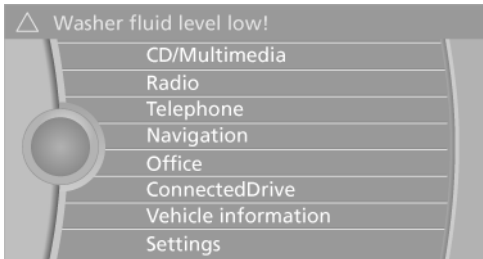
Principle



Indicator and warning lamps can light up in a variety of combinations and colours.

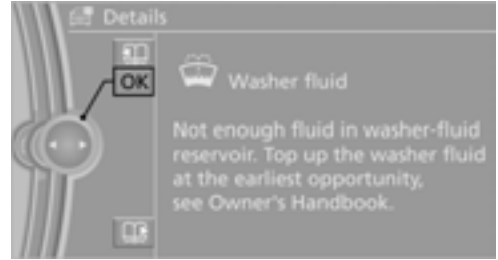
Some lights are checked for proper functioning and thus come on briefly when the engine starts or the ignition is switched on.

Text messages



Text messages at the top of the control display explain the meaning of the indicator and warning lamps being shown.

Supplementary text messages









Via Check Control, you can call up additional information on the control display, e.g. regarding the cause of a fault and the corresponding measures to be taken, see page 86.

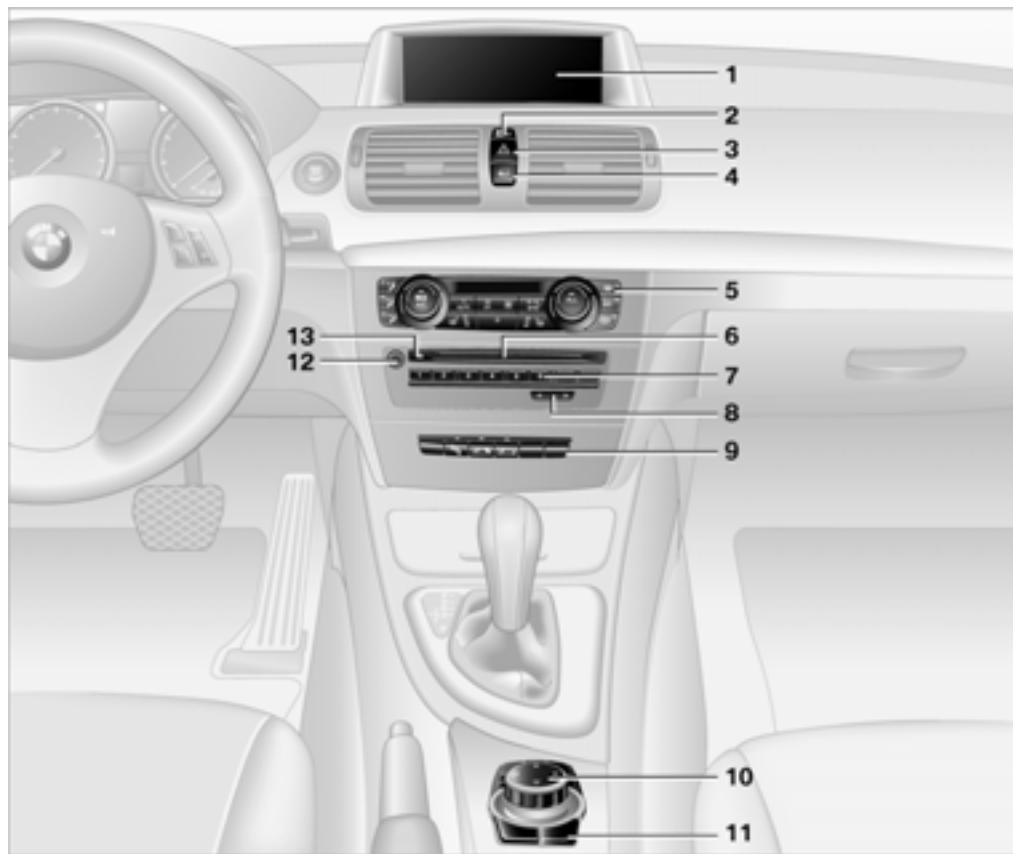
In urgent cases, this information will be shown as soon as the corresponding light comes on.

Indicator lamps not accompanied by text messages

The following indicator lamps indicate that specific functions are active:

-  High-beam headlights/headlight flasher [103](#)
-  Fog lights [104](#)
-  Rear fog lights [104](#)
-  Light flashes:
DSC or DTC regulates the propulsive forces in order to maintain driving stability [92](#)
-  Handbrake applied [65](#)
-  Engine fault with adverse effect on emissions [244](#)

Around the centre console: controls and displays



1 Control display [18](#)

2 Driving stability control systems


▷ Dynamic Stability Control DSC [91](#)


▷ Dynamic Traction Control DTC [92](#)


3 Hazard warning flashers


4 Central locking system [34](#)


5 Automatic air-conditioning system


 Air distribution to the windscreen [108](#)


 Air distribution to the upper body area [108](#)

 Air distribution to the footwell [108](#)


 AUTO Automatic air distribution and flow rate control [108](#)

 A/C Cooling function [110](#)

 Automatic Air Recirculation Control (AUC) and recirculated-air mode [109](#)

 MAX A/C Maximum cooling [108](#)

 ALL ALL programme [109](#)

 Air flow [109](#)



Defrosting windows [109](#)



Rear window heating [110](#)



Seat heating [52](#)


6 Drive for CD/DVD [168](#)


7 Favourites buttons [22](#)


8 Changing


▷ Radio stations [161](#)

▷ Tracks [168](#)

9  Park Distance Control PDC [90](#)

 Deactivating the automatic start/
stop function [64](#)

 Convertible: opening the
convertible top [43](#)

 Convertible: closing the convertible
top [43](#)

10 Controller [18](#)

Can be turned, pressed or tilted in four
directions

11 Buttons on the controller [19](#)

Select menus directly






12 Switching entertainment audio output on/
off and adjusting volume [158](#)

13 Ejecting CD/DVD [168](#)

In and around the roof lining





Coupé



- 1 Microphone for voice control system and hands-free mode for telephone
- 2  SOS: initiating an emergency call [256](#)
- 3  Reading lights [106](#)
- 4  Glass roof, electric [41](#)
- 5  Interior lights [105](#)
- 6  Indicator lamp for front passenger airbags [57](#)

Convertible



- 1  SOS: initiating an emergency call [256](#)
- 2  Reading lights [106](#)
- 3  Interior lights [105](#)
- 4  Indicator lamp for front passenger airbags [57](#)

iDrive

Vehicle equipment

This chapter describes all standard equipment, national market versions and optional equipment featured in the series. As such, it includes descriptions of equipment that might not be available in a vehicle on account of the optional equipment selected, for example, or the national-market version. This also applies for safety-relevant functions and systems.

Principle

iDrive integrates the functions of a large number of switches. These functions can now be controlled from one central point.



Only make adjustments if the traffic conditions are sufficiently quiet or clear, so as not to endanger the vehicle's occupants and other road users by being distracted. ◀

Overview of controls

Controls



- 1 Control display
- 2 Controller with buttons
The buttons can be used to call up menus

directly. The controller is used to select menu items and adjust settings:


- ▷ Tilt in four directions, arrows **3**
- ▷ Turn, arrow **4**
- ▷ Press, arrow **5**

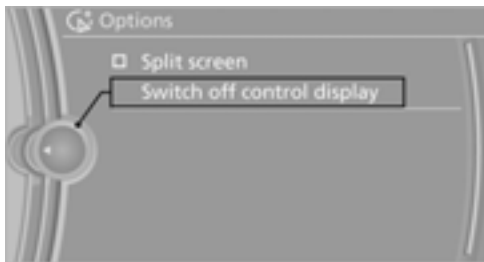
Control display

Notes

- ▷ Follow the care instructions for cleaning the control display.
- ▷ Do not store objects in front of the control display; otherwise, there is a risk of damage.

Switching off

1.  Press the button.
2. "Switch off control display"



Switching on

Press the controller to switch on.

Buttons on the controller

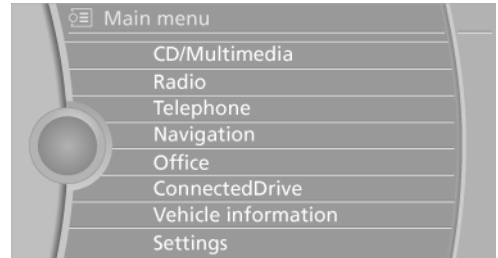
Symbol	Function
MENU	Calls up the main menu
RADIO	Calls up the 'Radio' menu
MEDIA	Calls up the CD/Multimedia menu
NAV	Calls up the map view for navigation
TEL	Calls up the 'Telephone' menu
BACK	Goes back to the previous screen
OPTION	Calling up the 'Options' menu

Operating principle

Calling up the main menu



Press the button.



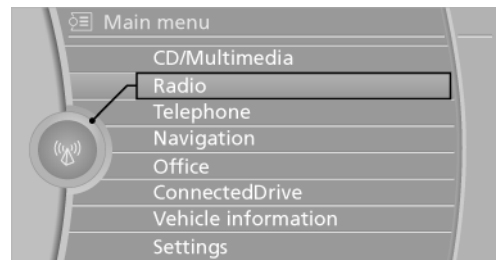
The main menu is displayed.

All the functions of iDrive can be called up via the main menu.

Selecting a menu item

Menu items in white can be selected by highlighting them.

1. Turn the controller until the desired menu item is highlighted.



2. Press the controller.

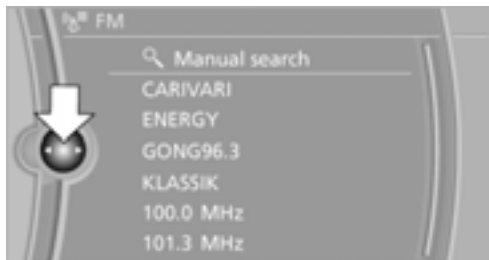
Menu items in the Owner's Handbook

In this Owner's Handbook, the menu items that are to be selected are shown between quotation marks, e.g. "Settings".

Switching between screens

When a menu item is selected, e.g. "Radio", a new screen is displayed. Screens can be displayed one on top of the other.

- ▶ Tilt the controller to the left.
The current screen closes and the previous one is displayed.
Pressing the BACK button reopens the previous screen. It does not close the current screen.
- ▶ Tilt the controller to the right.
A new screen opens and is superimposed on top of the previous one.



White arrows to the left or right indicate that other screens can be called up.

View when a menu is called up

When a menu is called up, the screen last selected in this menu is usually displayed. To display the first screen of the menu:

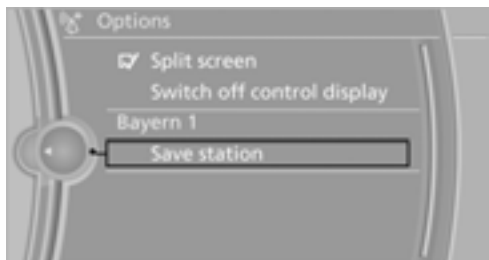
- ▶ Tilt the controller repeatedly to the left until the first screen is displayed.
- ▶ Press the menu button the controller twice.

Calling up the 'Options' menu



Press the button.

The "Options" menu is displayed.



Alternatively: tilt the controller repeatedly to the right until the "Options" menu is displayed.

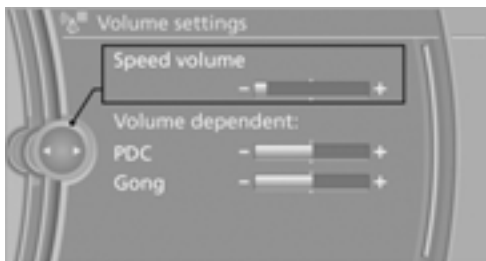
Options menu

The "Options" menu is divided into four different areas:

- ▶ Screen settings, e.g. "Split screen".
Area remains unchanged.
- ▶ Possible operator actions supported by the selected menu, e.g. "Radio".
- ▶ Further possible operator actions supported by the selected menu if applicable, e.g. "Save station".

Adjusting settings

1. Select a field.
2. Turn the controller until the desired setting is displayed.



3. Press the controller to confirm the setting.


Activating/Deactivating functions

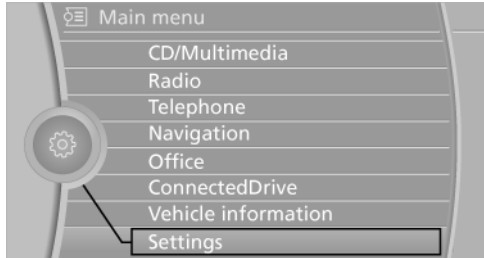
A small box appears in front of some menu items to show whether the function is activated or deactivated. Select the menu item to activate or deactivate the function.

The function is activated.

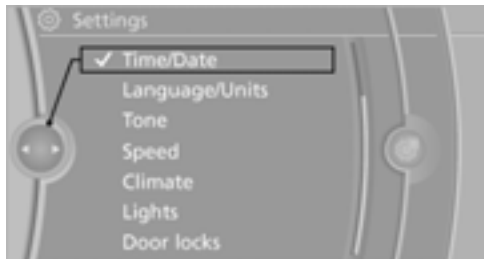
The function is deactivated.

An example: setting the clock

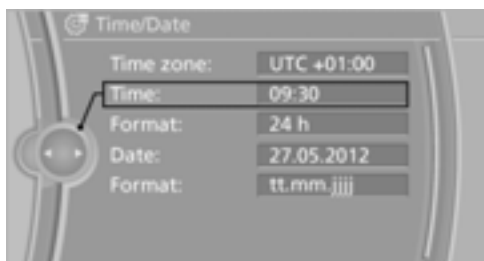
1.  Press the button.
The main menu is displayed.
2. Turn the controller until "Settings" is highlighted, and press the controller.



3. Tilt the controller to the left if applicable to display "Time/Date".
4. Turn the controller until "Time/Date" is highlighted, and press the controller.



5. Turn the controller until "Time:" is highlighted, and press the controller.



6. Turn the controller to set the hour and press the controller.
7. Turn the controller to set the minute and press the controller.

Status information

Status box



The following information is displayed in the status box on the top right:

- ▷ Time
- ▷ Current entertainment source
- ▷ Sound output ON/OFF
- ▷ Mobile phone network with strongest signal
- ▷ Telephone status
- ▷ Reception traffic reports













Status box symbols

The symbols are combined in individual groups.







Radio symbols

Symbol	Meaning
	Traffic information switched on
	


Telephone symbols

Symbol	Meaning
	Incoming or outgoing call
	Missed call
	Mobile phone network with strongest signal symbol flashing: network search
	No mobile phone networks available
	Bluetooth switched on
	Data transmission active
	Roaming active
	SMS, e-mail received
	Check SIM card
	SIM card locked
	SIM card missing
	Enter PIN

Entertainment symbols

Symbol	Meaning
	CD/DVD player
	Music collection
	Gracenote® database
	AUX-IN port
	USB audio interface
	Music interface for smartphones

Other scope

Symbol	Meaning
	Spoken instructions switched off


With Professional navigation system: Split screen

General guidance


Additional information (from the on-board computer, for example), can be displayed in the right-hand section of the split screen.

This information remains visible on the split screen even if you switch to a different menu.

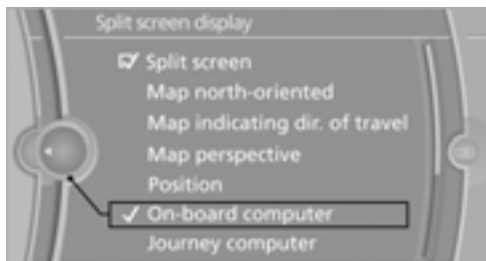
Switching the split screen view on and off

-  Press the button.
- "Split screen"

Selecting display

-  Press the button.
- "Split screen"
- Tilt the controller until the split screen is selected.
- Press the controller or select "Split screen display".

- Select the desired menu item.




Favourites buttons

General guidance

iDrive functions including radio stations, destinations and telephone numbers can be saved to favourites buttons so that they can be called directly.

The settings are saved for the remote control currently in use.

Storing a function

- Highlight the function via iDrive.
-  Press and hold down the required button for more than 2 seconds.

Running a function

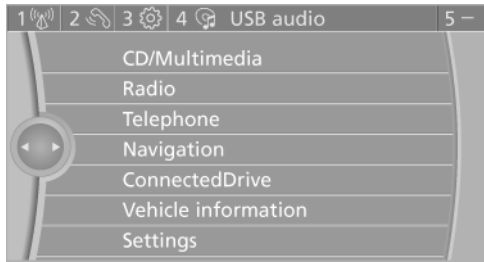
 Press the button.

The function is run immediately. This means that e.g. on selection of a telephone number the connection is also established.

Displaying the assignment of the buttons

Touch the buttons with your finger. Do not wear gloves or use objects.

The assignment of the buttons is displayed at the top edge of the screen.



- ▷ To display brief information: press the button.
- ▷ To display detailed information: press and hold down the button.

Entering letters and digits

1. Turn the controller: selects letters or digits.
2. If applicable, select other letters or digits.
3. "OK": confirm input.

Symbol	Function
	Press the controller: deletes a letter or digit
	Press and hold down the controller: deletes all numbers or letters
	Enters a space

Switching between letters and digits

Depending on the menu, you can switch between the input of letters and digits:

Symbol	Function
	To enter letters
	To enter digits

Switching between upper-case and lower-case letters

In some menus you can switch between the input of upper-case and lower-case letters:

Symbol	Function
	Tilt the controller forward: switches from upper-case to lower-case letters
	Tilt the controller forward: switches from lower-case to upper-case letters

Comparison of inputs

Input of names and addresses: the selection is gradually narrowed down and possibly supplemented with every subsequent letter that you enter.

Inputs are continuously compared with the data stored in the vehicle.

- ▷ Only letters for which data is available can be selected when making an input.
- ▷ Destination search: town/city names can be entered in the syntax of all the languages available on the control display.

Voice control system

Vehicle equipment

This chapter describes all standard equipment, national market versions and optional equipment featured in the series. As such, it includes descriptions of equipment that might not be available in a vehicle on account of the optional equipment selected, for example, or the national-market version. This also applies for safety-relevant functions and systems.

Principle

- ▷ The voice control system supports the operation of most functions by means of spoken commands.
- ▷ Functions which can only be used when the vehicle is stationary cannot be operated using the voice control system.
- ▷ The system features a special microphone on the driver's side.
- ▷ ›...‹ Identifies commands for the voice control system in the Owner's Handbook.
- ▷ ››...‹‹ Identifies replies by the voice control system in the Owner's Handbook.


Condition


So that voice commands can be identified, select a language supported by the voice control system on the control display.

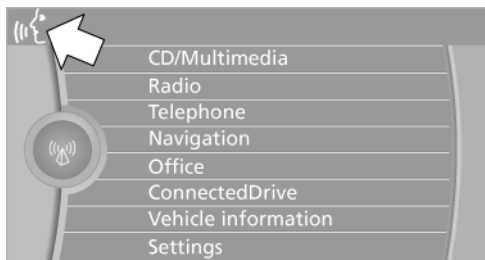
Language selection, see page 89.

Speaking commands

Activating voice control


1. Press the  button on the steering wheel.
2. Wait for the signal to sound.
3. Say a command.

 This symbol on the control display and a sound signal tell you that the voice control system is active.



If no further commands are possible, continue by operating the equipment via iDrive.

Completing voice control

Press the  button on the steering wheel or

 ›Cancel‹

Possible commands

Most of the menu items on the control display can be called up as voice commands.


The possible commands are determined by which menu is currently shown on the control display.

There are short commands for the main menu functions.

Some list entries, e.g. phone book entries, can also be selected via the voice control system. Take care to say the list entries exactly as they are displayed in the corresponding list.

Having possible commands read aloud

To have possible commands read aloud:

 ›Voice commands‹

If, for example, the "Settings" menu is displayed, the commands for the settings are said out loud.


Using short commands to execute functions

Functions from the main menu can be executed directly using short commands, virtually regardless of which menu item is selected, e.g. ›Vehicle status‹.

List of short commands for the voice control system, see page 272.

Help dialogue box for the voice control system

To call the help:




 ›Help‹

Other commands for the help dialogue box:

- ▷ ›Help with examples‹: information about the operator actions that are currently possible and the most important commands associated with them are read aloud.
- ▷ ›Help with voice input‹: information about the principle of operation of the voice control system is read aloud.



An example: playing back CD

Via the main menu

1. If necessary, switch on entertainment audio output.
2. Press the  button on the steering wheel.
-  3. ›C D and multimedia‹
The last medium played is played.
4. ›C D‹
5. ›C D drive‹
The CD is played.
6. Press the  button on the steering wheel again to select specific tracks.
7. ›Track ...‹ e.g. CD track 4.

Via the short command

CD playback can also be started using a short command.

1. If necessary, switch on entertainment audio output.
2. Press the  button on the steering wheel.
-  3. ›C D drive Track ...‹ e.g. CD track 4.

Setting the speech dialogue

You can set whether the system uses the standard dialogue or a short version.

With the short variant of the voice dialogue, the commands and responses of the system are shortened.

On the control display:

1. "Settings"
2. "Language/Units"
3. "Speech mode:"
4. Select a setting.



Adjusting the volume

Turn the volume knob during the spoken instruction until the desired volume is obtained.

- ▷ The volume remains set to this level even if the volume of other audio sources is adjusted.
- ▷ The volume setting is memorised for the remote control currently in use.

Information for emergency calls

Do not use the voice control system for emergency calls. In stress situations, the spoken language and voice pitch can change. This delays establishment of a telephone connection unnecessarily.

Use the SOS button, see page 256, near the inside mirror instead.

Ambient conditions

- ▷ Say commands, digits and letters fluently and in a normal volume, intonation and speed.
- ▷ Always speak the commands in the language of the voice control system.
- ▷ When selecting a radio station, use the standard pronunciation of the station name:
›Station ...‹ e.g the station Bayern 3
- ▷ Keep doors, windows and the glass roof/panorama glass roof closed to avoid noise interference.
- ▷ Avoid ambient noise in the vehicle while you are speaking.



Controls

This chapter enables you to operate your car with greater ease. All equipment items that are of relevance for driving and make your journey safer and more comfortable are described here.

Opening and closing

Vehicle equipment

This chapter describes all standard equipment, national market versions and optional equipment featured in the series. As such, it includes descriptions of equipment that might not be available in a vehicle on account of the optional equipment selected, for example, or the national-market version. This also applies for safety-relevant functions and systems.

Remote control

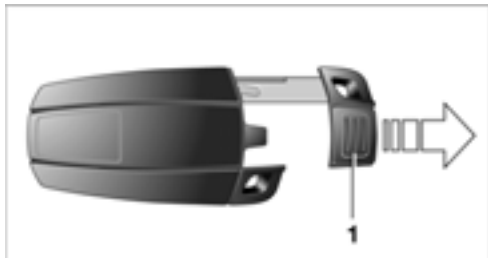


Every remote control contains a rechargeable battery that is automatically recharged when it is in the ignition lock while the car is being driven. Drive a longer distance with each remote control at least twice annually in order to maintain battery charge. If your car is fitted with Comfort Access, the remote control contains a replaceable battery, see page 39.

The settings called up and implemented when the car is unlocked depend on which remote control is used to unlock the car, see Personal Profile, next column.

In addition, information about service requirements is stored in the remote control, see Service data in the remote control, page 243.

Integrated key



Press button 1 to release the key.

The integrated key fits the following locks:

- ▷ Key switch for front passenger airbags, see page 56
- ▷ Driver's door, see page 34
- ▷ Convertible: glove box, see page 112

New remote controls

Service can supply new remote controls with integrated keys, as additional units or as replacements in the event of loss.

Personal Profile

The principle

You can set many of your BMW's functions to suit your personal needs and preferences. Without any action on your part, Personal Profile ensures that most of these settings are saved for the remote control currently in use. When you unlock the car the remote control used for the purpose is recognised and the settings saved for it are called up and implemented.

This means that your personal settings will be activated for you, even if in the meantime your BMW was used by someone else with another remote control and the corresponding settings. The individual settings are memorised for a

maximum of four remote controls; in the case of Comfort Access, for two.

Personal Profile settings

For more information on specific settings, see the pages referred to.

- ▷ Assignment of the Favourites buttons, see page 22
- ▷ Response of the central locking system when the car is unlocked, see page 32
- ▷ Automatic locking of the vehicle, see page 34
- ▷ Automatic call-up of the driver's seat position, see page 52
- ▷ Triple turn signal, see page 73
- ▷ Settings for display on the control display and in the instrument cluster:
 - ▷ 12-hour/24-hour format of the clock, see page 84
 - ▷ Date format, see page 86
 - ▷ Brightness of the control display, see page 89
 - ▷ Language on the control display, see page 89
 - ▷ Units of measure for fuel consumption, distance covered/remaining range, and temperature, see page 82
- ▷ Show visual warning for Park Distance Control PDC, see page 91
- ▷ Light settings:
 - ▷ Welcome lights, see page 101
 - ▷ Headlight courtesy delay feature, see page 101
 - ▷ Daytime driving lights, see page 101
 - ▷ High beam assistance, see page 103
- ▷ Automatic air-conditioning system: activating/deactivating AUTO programme, cooling function and Automatic Air Recirculation Control, setting temperature, air flow and distribution, see from page 108 onwards

- ▷ Entertainment:
 - ▷ Adjusting tone, see page 158
 - ▷ Speed-dependent volume control, see page 159

Central locking system

The principle

The central locking system functions when the driver's door is closed.

The following are unlocked or locked in combination:

- ▷ Doors
- ▷ Luggage area lid
- ▷ Fuel filler flap

Operating from outside

- ▷ Via the remote control
- ▷ Via the door lock
- ▷ With Comfort Access by means of the handles on the driver's and the front passenger's door

Simultaneously for locking and unlocking via the remote control:


- ▷ Anti-theft protection is switched on/off at the same time dependent on the equipment. Anti-theft protection prevents the doors from being unlocked either at the safety lock buttons or door handles.
- ▷ Welcome lights, interior lights and ground lights are switched on or off.
- ▷ Alarm system, see page 36, is armed or disarmed.


Operating from inside

By means of the button for central locking, see page 34.


In the event of a sufficiently severe accident, the central locking system unlocks automatically. The hazard warning flashers and the interior light are in addition switched on.


Opening and closing: With the remote control

 Persons remaining in the vehicle or pets left inside can lock the doors from the inside. You should therefore take the remote control with you when you get out of the vehicle so that the latter can be opened from the outside. ◀

 Convertible: for operation of the convertible top with the remote control, the doors and luggage area lid must be closed, and the luggage compartment partition must be folded down and locked in place on both sides. See also page 44. ◀

Unlocking

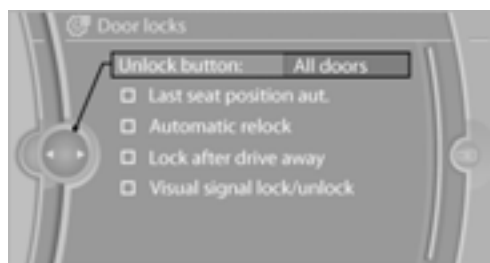
Press the  button.
The interior lights, the doors' ground lights and the welcome lights come on.




Press the  button twice.
When the door is opened, the window is lowered to make access easier.

Setting the unlocking characteristics


You can set whether the first press of the button unlocks only the driver's door or the entire vehicle.

1. "Settings"
2. "Door locks"
3. "Unlock button"





4. To select a menu item:
 - ▷ "All doors"
Press the  button once to unlock the entire vehicle.
 - ▷ "Driver's door only"
Press the  button once to unlock the driver's door and the fuel filler flap. Press it twice to unlock the entire vehicle.
 - ▷ "Comfort entry"
Press the  button twice.
When the door is opened, the window is lowered to make access easier.
5. Press the controller.


Coupé: convenient opening

Press and hold down the  button.
The windows and the glass roof are opened.

Convertible: convenient opening


Press and hold down the  button.
The windows and the convertible top are opened as long as the doors are closed.

With Comfort Access: if you press and hold down the  button when you are near the vehicle, the windows will move upwards after opening the convertible top.


 Watch the opening movement to ensure that no one is trapped. The opening movement is interrupted if the button is released. ◀


Locking

Press the  button.

 Do not lock the car from the outside when there is someone inside it, as it cannot then be unlocked from the inside in some national-market versions. ◀

Coupé: convenient closing


Press and hold down the  button.
The windows and the glass roof are closed.

 Watch the closing movement to ensure that no-one is trapped. Letting go of the button will interrupt the closing process. ◀

Convertible: convenient closing

When close to the vehicle, you can close the convertible top and the windows using the remote control for Comfort Access.

Press and hold down the **LOCK** button. The convertible top and the windows are closed.

 Watch the closing movement to ensure that no-one is trapped. Letting go of the button will interrupt the closing process. ◀


Switching on the interior light

While the car is locked:


Press the **LOCK** button.

This function also enables you to locate the car, for instance in a parking garage.

Unlocking the luggage area lid

Press the  button for approx. 1 second.

The luggage area lid opens a short distance, regardless of whether it was locked or unlocked.

 On certain national-market versions, the luggage area lid cannot be opened unless the car has been unlocked.

The luggage area lid swings rearwards and upwards when opened. Make sure that there is sufficient clearance.

To prevent being locked out inadvertently, do not place the remote control in the luggage compartment.

If the luggage area lid had been locked before it was opened, it is locked again as soon as it is closed.

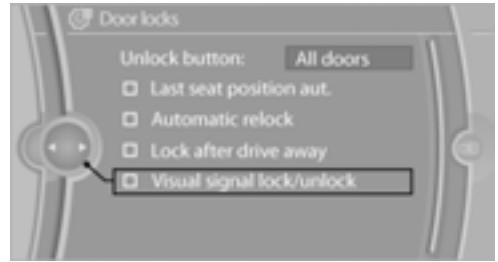
Before and after each trip, check that the luggage area lid has not been inadvertently unlocked. ◀

Confirmation signals

You can activate or deactivate the confirmation signals.

1. "Settings"
2. "Door locks"

3. "Visual signal lock/unlock"




4. Press the controller.

Calling up the driver's seat position

The driver's seat position last set is memorised for the remote control currently in use.

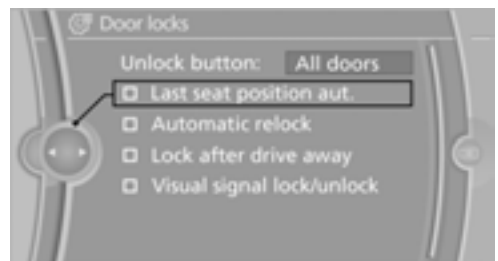
You can select whether the seat is reset to that position automatically.

 When this Personal Profile function is used, first make sure that the footwell behind the driver's seat is free of obstacles. Otherwise, persons could be injured or objects could be damaged should the seat start to move towards the rear. ◀

The adjusting procedure is halted when you press a seat adjustment switch or touch one of the memory buttons.

Selecting automatic call-up

1. "Settings"
2. "Door locks"
3. "Last seat position aut."



The setting is memorised for the remote control currently in use.

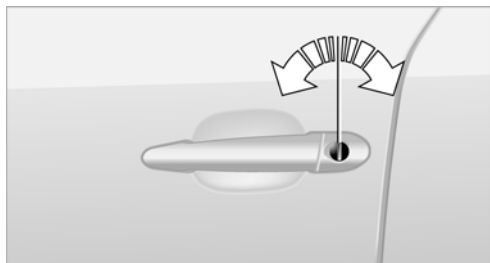
Malfunctions

The remote control may malfunction as a result of interference from localised radio signals. If this occurs, unlock and lock the car at the door lock with the integrated key.


Coupé: in vehicles without Comfort Access, the driver's door can only be unlocked and locked with the integrated key via the door lock.


If the car can no longer be locked with a remote control, the battery in the remote control is flat. Use this remote control for a longer journey so that the battery is recharged, see page 30. The remote control for Comfort Access contains a battery that might have to be replaced, see page 39.

Opening and closing: Via the door lock



You can set the way in which the car is unlocked, see page 32.

 Do not lock the car from the outside when there is someone inside it, as it cannot then be unlocked from the inside in some national-market versions and optional equipment. ◀

 **Coupé:** without Comfort Access and in some national-market versions, the alarm system is triggered when the car is unlocked via the door lock.

To switch off the alarm:

Unlock the car with the remote control, see page 32, or insert the remote control fully into the ignition lock. ◀

For further details of the alarm system, see page 36.

Coupé



Without Comfort Access, only the driver's door is locked via the door lock. ◀

To lock both doors, the fuel filler flap and the luggage area lid together:

1. With the doors closed, lock the car by means of the central locking button in the passenger compartment, see page 34.
2. Unlock and open the driver's or the front passenger's door, see page 35.
3. Lock the vehicle.
 - ▷ Lock the driver's door via the door lock with the integrated key or
 - ▷ Press down the locking button on the front passenger's door and close the door from outside.

Manual operation

In the event of an electrical fault, you can lock and unlock the driver's door by turning the integrated key to the limit positions in the door lock.

Opening and closing: From inside

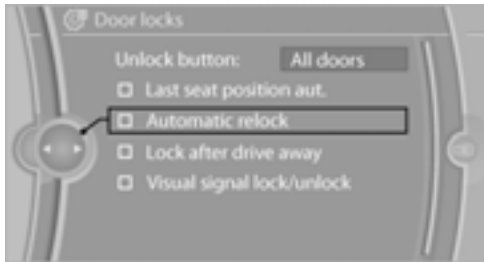


The doors and the luggage area lid are unlocked or locked, but not deadlocked, with this button when the doors are closed. Dependent upon the equipment version, the fuel filler flap might remain unlocked.

Automatic locking

You can also set the situations in which the car locks:

1. "Settings"
2. "Door locks"
3. Select the desired function:
 - ▷ "Automatic relock"
The central locking will engage after a short while if no doors have been opened.
 - ▷ "Lock after drive away"
The central locking engages as soon as you drive off.



The setting is memorised for the remote control currently in use.

Unlocking and opening

- ▷ Either unlock the doors together using the central locking button and then pull the door handle above the armrest or
- ▷ Pull the handle on each individual door twice: the first time to unlock the door, and the second time to open it.

Locking

- ▷ Either lock all doors at once via the central locking button, or
- ▷ Press down the safety lock button of a door. To prevent that you are shut out of the car accidentally, the driver's door cannot be locked with the safety lock button when it is open.



Persons remaining in the vehicle or pets left inside can lock the doors from the inside. You should therefore take the remote control with you when you get out of the vehicle so that the latter can be opened from the outside. ◀

Luggage area lid



In order to avoid damage, make sure there is sufficient clearance before opening the luggage area lid. ◀


Opening from inside



Press the button: the luggage area lid opens if it is not deadlocked.

Opening from outside



Press the button, see arrow, or press the  button on the remote control for a longer period of time. The luggage area lid opens and can be swung upwards.



On certain national-market versions, the luggage area lid can only be opened with the remote control if the car has first been unlocked. ◀

Locking or unlocking separately



The switch is located in the glove box.

- 1 Locking the luggage area lid
- 2 Unlocking the luggage area lid

Locking separately

Push the switch in the direction of the arrow **1**.

The luggage area lid is locked and cannot be unlocked using the central-locking system.

If the glove box is locked and you hand over the remote control without the integrated key, the luggage area lid cannot be opened. This is an advantage e.g. in a hotel. Locking the glove box, see page 112.

Unlocking separately

Push the switch in the direction of the arrow **2**.

Emergency release




Pull the lever in the luggage compartment. This will unlock the luggage area lid.

Fastening



The recessed handles in the luggage area lid lining make it easier to pull the luggage area lid down.

 To avoid injuries, ensure that the closing area of the luggage area lid is unobstructed. ◀

Alarm system

The principle

The alarm system will respond if:

- ▷ A door, the engine compartment lid or the luggage area lid is opened
- ▷ There is any movement inside the car: interior movement detector, see page 37
- ▷ The car's tilt changes, for instance if an attempt is made to jack it up and steal the wheels or to raise it prior to towing away: tilt alarm sensor, see page 37
- ▷ There is an interruption in the power supply from the battery

Depending on the national-market version of the car, the alarm system briefly indicates unauthorised entry or tampering by means of:

- ▷ Audible alarm
- ▷ Switching on the hazard warning flashers

Arming and disarming

General guidance

Whenever the car is locked or unlocked, either with the remote control or at the door lock, the

alarm system is armed or disarmed at the same time.


Door lock with alarm system armed

On certain national-market versions, unlocking via the door lock triggers off the alarm.

To stop this alarm, unlock the vehicle with the remote control or switch on the ignition.

Luggage area lid with alarm system armed

The luggage area lid can be opened with the remote control even if the alarm system has been armed.


Press and hold down the  button on the remote control for approx. 1 second.

When the luggage area lid is closed, it locks and is monitored.

On certain national-market versions, the luggage area lid cannot be opened with the remote control unless the car has been unlocked first.

Panic mode

You can activate the alarm system in the event of danger.

Press the  button for at least three seconds.

To switch off the alarm: press any button.

Switching off an alarm

- ▷ Unlock the car with the remote control, see page 32, or
- ▷ Insert the remote control fully into the ignition lock.

Indicator lamp on the inside mirror



- ▷ Indicator lamp flashing rapidly and continuously:
The system is armed.
- ▷ Indicator lamp flashing after locking:
Doors, engine compartment lid or luggage area lid are not properly closed; the rest of the vehicle has been secured.
Indicator lamp flashes rapidly then lights up steady after approx. 10 seconds. Interior motion sensor and tilt sensor are not active.
- ▷ Indicator lamp goes out after unlocking:
The vehicle has not been tampered with.
- ▷ If the indicator lamp flashes after unlocking until the remote control is inserted in the ignition, but for no longer than approx. 5 minutes:
The vehicle has been tampered with.

Tilt alarm sensor

The vehicle's tilt is monitored. The alarm will be triggered for instance if an attempt is made to steal the vehicle's wheels or tow it away.

Interior movement detector

Coupé

For fault-free operation, the windows and the glass roof must be closed.

Convertible

The interior of the vehicle up to the level of the seat cushions is monitored. This means the alarm system, including the interior movement detector, is also activated when the convertible top is open. Falling objects, for example leaves, can trigger a false alarm, see Avoiding false alarms.

Avoiding false alarms

The tilt sensor and the interior motion sensor can be switched off together in the following situations, for example:

- ▷ In car washes
- ▷ In duplex garages

- ▷ When being transported on vehicle-carrying trains, boats/ships or trailers
- ▷ If there are animals in the vehicle

Switching off the tilt alarm sensor and interior movement detector

Press the **LOCK** button on the remote control again within 10 seconds, as soon as the vehicle is locked.

The indicator lamp lights up briefly, then continues to flash rapidly. The tilt alarm sensor and interior movement detector are switched off until the next time the vehicle is unlocked and locked.

Comfort Access

Principle

The vehicle can be accessed without activating the remote control. It is sufficient to have the remote control on your person, for example in a jacket pocket. The vehicle recognises the remote control automatically when it is in the vicinity or inside the car.

Comfort Access supports the following functions:

- ▷ Unlocking/locking the vehicle
- ▷ Convenient closing
- ▷ Unlocking just the luggage area lid
- ▷ Starting the engine

Operating requirements

- ▷ There are no external sources of interference in the vicinity.
- ▷ To lock the vehicle, the remote control must be located outside the car.
- ▷ Approx. 2 seconds have to elapse before the car can be unlocked and locked again.
- ▷ The engine can only be started if the remote control is in the vehicle.

Comparison with conventional remote control

The functions listed can be operated by pressing the buttons on the remote control or Comfort Access.

- ▷ If there is a short delay when opening and closing windows, glass roof or convertible top, this is because a check is being carried out whether there is a remote control in the vehicle. If necessary, please repeat the opening or closing operation. ◀

Unlocking



Put your hand right round the handle of the driver's or the front passenger's door, arrow **1**.

This corresponds to pressing the **UNLOCK** button.

If the remote control is detected inside the vehicle after unlocking, the electric steering lock unlocks, see page **62**.

Locking

Touch the door handle, arrow **2**, with your finger for approx. 1 second.

This corresponds to pressing the **LOCK** button.

- ▷ Please make sure that the ignition and all electrical consumers are switched off prior to locking in order to preserve the battery. ◀

Coupé: convenient closing


Touch the surface, arrow **2**, and press down with your finger.


Convertible: operating the windows and convertible top

With the ignition at least at radio readiness, you can open and close the windows and the convertible top as long as the remote control is located inside the car.

Unlocking just the luggage area lid

Press the button on the outside of the luggage area lid.

This corresponds to pressing the  button.

 If a remote control inadvertently left behind is detected inside the locked vehicle after you close the luggage area lid, the lid reopens. The hazard warning flashers flash and a signal sounds. ◀

Switching on radio readiness

Press the start/stop button to switch on radio readiness.

Do not depress the brake or the clutch, otherwise the engine will start immediately.

Starting the engine

You can start the engine or switch on the ignition if a remote control is inside the vehicle. It is not necessary to insert the remote control in the ignition lock, see page 62.

Switching off the engine in vehicles with automatic transmission

The engine can be switched off only when the selector lever is in position P, see page 64. To switch off the engine with the selector lever in position N, the remote control must be in the ignition lock.

Malfunctions

Local radio waves from a mobile phone in the immediate vicinity of the remote control or from a charger being used to charge a mobile phone in the vehicle, for example, can interfere with the function of Comfort Access.

In this case, open and close the vehicle using the buttons on the remote control or with the integrated key. You can subsequently start the engine by inserting the remote control into the ignition lock.

Warning lamps



If the warning lamp in the instrument cluster comes on when you attempt to start the engine: engine starting not possible. The remote control is not inside the vehicle or is faulty. Bring the remote control inside the vehicle or have it checked. Try inserting a different remote control in the ignition lock.



If the warning lamp in the instrument cluster comes on while the engine is running: the remote control is no longer inside the vehicle. After the engine is then switched off, it can be restarted only within approx. 10 seconds.



If the indicator lamp in the instrument cluster comes on and a message appears on the control display: Change the battery in the remote control.


Changing the battery

The battery in the remote control for Comfort Access requires replacement from time to time.


1. Remove the integrated key from the remote control, see page 30.



2. Remove the cover.
3. Insert a new battery with the plus side up.
4. Press the cover back into position.

 Take the old battery to a collection point or hand it in to Service. ◀

Windows

 Watch the windows during the closing action to avoid injuries. When leaving the car, take the remote control out of the ignition lock, otherwise children could operate the electric windows and possibly injure themselves. ◀

Coupé: opening, closing




- ▷ Press the switch as far as the pressure point:
The window opens as long as you hold the switch in this position.
- ▷ Press the switch beyond the pressure point:
The window opens automatically. Press the switch again to halt the opening movement.

Close the window similarly by pulling the switch.

Convertible: opening, closing

Operating the windows with Comfort Access, see page 32.

 When closing the side windows with the car moving, always close the front windows first, or close all four windows simultaneously, otherwise the windows may not seal tightly at higher speeds. ◀

Individually



- ▷ Press the switch as far as the pressure point:
The window opens as long as you hold the switch in this position.
- ▷ Press the switch beyond the pressure point:
The window opens automatically. Press the switch again to halt the opening movement.

Close the window similarly by pulling the switch. The rear side windows cannot be closed automatically.

Together



- ▷ Press the switch as far as the pressure point:
All windows open as long as you press the switch.
- ▷ Press the switch beyond the pressure point:
All windows open automatically. Press the switch again to halt the opening movement.
- ▷ Pull the switch:
All windows close as long as you pull the switch.

After the ignition is switched off


You can still operate the windows for approx. 1 minute after the remote control has been removed or the ignition switched off.

Convenient operation

For convenient operation using the remote control, see page 32. For convenient closing with Comfort Access, see Locking on page 38.

Trap protection

If the closing force of an electric window exceeds a specific value as it closes, the closing action is interrupted and the window reopens slightly.

 Despite the trap protection function, make sure that the windows are not obstructed as they close; if this precaution is not taken, the risk remains that thin objects, for instance, could fail to interrupt the closing movement.

Do not install any accessories in the movement range of the windows in order not to impair the trap protection function.


Convertible: the rear windows have no trap protection function. Observe the rear windows very carefully during the closing procedure, to avoid any injuries. ◀

Closing without the trap protection function

In case of an external hazard, or if ice on the windows, etc., does not allow you to close the windows normally, proceed as follows:

1. Pull the switch past the pressure point and hold it there. The trap protection function is restricted and the window opens slightly when the closing force exceeds a certain value.
2. Pull the switch past the pressure point again within approx. 4 seconds and hold it there. The window closes without the trap protection function.

Coupé: glass roof, electric

 Observe the glass roof during the closing procedure, to avoid any injuries.


Take the remote control with you when you leave the car, otherwise children could operate the roof and possibly injure themselves. ◀



Raising

Press the switch.

- ▷ From the closed position, the glass roof is raised and the sliding trim opens slightly.
- ▷ The open glass roof moves automatically to the raised position. The sliding trim remains completely open.

 Do not close the sliding trim forcibly with the roof in the raised position, as this could damage the mechanism. ◀

Opening, closing

- ▷ Push the switch toward the rear to the pressure point. The glass roof and the sliding trim open together as long as you hold the switch in this position.
- ▷ Push the switch to the rear past the pressure point. The glass roof and the sliding trim open automatically. Press the switch again briefly to halt the opening movement.

Close the glass roof similarly by pushing the switch forward. The sliding trim remains open and can be closed manually.


For convenient operation using the remote control, see page 32. For convenient closing with Comfort Access, see Locking on page 38.

After the ignition is switched off

You can still operate the roof for approx. 1 minute after the remote control has been removed or the ignition switched off.

Trap protection

If the glass roof encounters an obstruction while closing from approximately half-open position, or during closing from the raised position, the closing movement is interrupted and the glass roof is opened again slightly.

 Despite the trap protection function, make sure that the roof is not obstructed as it closes; if this precaution is not taken, the risk remains that thin objects, for instance, could fail to interrupt the closing movement. ◀

Closing without the trap protection function

If there is an external hazard, push the switch forwards beyond the pressure point and hold it there. The roof closes without trap protection.

After a power failure

After a power failure, there is a possibility that the glass roof can only be raised. The system must be initialised. BMW recommends having this work carried out by Service.

Convertible: convertible top

The fully automatic convertible top combines safe weather protection with easy and convenient operation.

To ensure plenty of driving pleasure with your Convertible, here are a few tips:

- ▷ It is recommended to close the convertible top when parking the vehicle. The closed convertible top protects the passenger compartment against unexpected weather

damage and also offers a certain amount of protection against theft. Always keep valuables only in the locked luggage compartment, even if the convertible top is closed.

- ▷ Do not install any roof rack systems on the convertible top.
- ▷ If the convertible top is opened when wet, drops of water can enter the luggage compartment, for example after a journey in the rain. To avoid soiling and water stains, remove any items from the luggage compartment beforehand.



To avoid causing damage, do not operate the convertible top at temperatures below $-10\text{ }^{\circ}\text{C}/+14\text{ }^{\circ}\text{F}$.

Do not leave the convertible top stowed away in its compartment for more than one day when wet, otherwise it can sustain damage due to the moisture.

Never place any objects on the convertible top, otherwise they could fall off when operating it and cause damage or injury.

Never move the convertible top with the rollover protection system extended.

Always complete the convertible top movement. Driving with the convertible top not completely open or closed could result in damage or injuries.

Do not reach into the mechanism during opening or closing. Keep children out of the convertible top's range of movement.

For safety reasons, only operate the convertible top when the vehicle is stationary if possible. ◀



The convertible top swings out in upward direction during opening and closing.

When moving the convertible top in garages, under bridges or in similar situations, ensure that there are at least 2 m, approx. 6 ft 7 in, of headroom, as otherwise the vehicle can be damaged. ◀

Before opening and closing

- ▷ Observe the above safety instructions.
- ▷ Make sure that the luggage compartment partition is folded down and has locked into


place on both sides, see page 115, otherwise it will not be possible to open the convertible top.

- ▷ Make sure that no loaded objects strike the luggage compartment partition from below.
- ▷ Make sure that the luggage area lid is closed.

Opening and closing

Operating the convertible top with Comfort Access, see page 32.


As of radio readiness, see page 63:

 To preserve the battery, preferably open the convertible top only when the engine is running.

Before closing the convertible top remove possible foreign matter from the windscreen frame, otherwise the closing operation may be obstructed. ◀



- 1 Push the switch: closing the convertible top
- 2 Push the switch: open the convertible top
- 3 LEDs

 When the convertible top is opened, the side windows move downwards.

If you keep pushing the button once the left-hand LED 3 has gone out, the windows will close again. ◀


If the convertible top will no longer function after several attempts have been made to move it in quick succession or if it jams in an intermediate position for a prolonged period, the drive has overheated.

Close the convertible top if possible, and allow the drive to cool for a few minutes.

Operation while driving

Up to a speed of approx. 40 km/h, approx. 25 mph, you can also open or close the convertible top while the vehicle is being driven.

If you accelerate to more than 50 km/h, approx. 30 mph, during the convertible top movement, the operation is interrupted.

 Pay attention to the other traffic when operating the convertible top while the vehicle is in motion, otherwise there is a risk of accidents. If possible, do not operate the convertible top while reversing since vision is very limited due to the movement of the convertible top. In strong winds, do not operate the convertible top while the vehicle is being driven. Do not drive faster than 50 km/h, approx. 30 mph, as otherwise the vehicle can be damaged. ◀

LEDs

- ▷ The left-hand LED lights up green while the convertible top is moving. It goes out as soon as the opening or closing process is complete.

In the following situations, in addition to the LED, a message appears on the control display and an acoustic signal may sound:


- ▷ If the right-hand LED flashes red when the button is released, the opening or closing process is not yet complete.
- ▷ If the right-hand LED lights up red when the button is pushed, either the luggage compartment partition is folded up, the luggage area lid is not closed, the vehicle is on an incline, or there is a malfunction. The convertible top cannot be moved.


Interrupting

The automatic sequence of movements is interrupted if you release the button which operates the convertible top. Movement in the desired direction can be resumed by pushing the appropriate button.

If the opening or closing process is interrupted for a prolonged period of time, the convertible

top remains in position for approx. 10 minutes before it is slowly adjusted to a more stable position.


 A not fully open or closed convertible top is dangerous. ◀

 If the convertible top is not completely opened or closed, the luggage area lid cannot be opened and the windows cannot be moved. ◀

Convenient operation using the remote control

See page 32.

Closing manually

 Close the convertible top manually only when absolutely necessary, and never attempt to open the top manually. The convertible top compartment lid cannot be locked in the event of an electrical fault and would fly open during a journey. Inexpert handling could result in damage. ◀

Ask a second person for assistance in closing the top manually. The rear seats must not be occupied.


Only move the convertible top and convertible top compartment lid when the ignition is switched off.

Before closing

1. Open the luggage area lid.
2. Take the screwdriver out of the toolkit, see page 249.



3. If the convertible top compartment lid is locked, loosen the two buttons in the luggage compartment, arrows **1**, using the screwdriver and then pull firmly as far as possible. The convertible top compartment lid will be released.

 After unlocking, do not push the buttons back into the luggage area panelling. ◀

4. When closing the convertible top manually, the luggage area lid can no longer be opened. Remove essential items from the luggage area and close the luggage area lid.
5. Switch off the ignition.

Closing

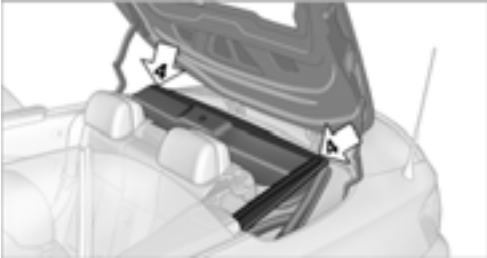
1. Push the cover cap, arrow **2**, forwards.
2. Open the convertible top compartment lid, arrow **3**, slowly and smoothly as far as it will go.



3. The locking pins must have fully engaged. If they are still visible: close the convertible top compartment lid again until the bolts audibly engage, and then open slowly. In doing so, do not close the convertible top compartment lid fully.



- Lift the convertible top out by the front section, see arrows **4**, on both sides and swing forwards. In doing so, hold the convertible top compartment lid open, e.g. with your shoulder.



- Place the rear convertible top frame vertically, arrow **5**, and close the convertible top compartment lid, arrow **6**. Then set down the rear convertible top frame.




- Both persons should now press the front convertible top frame down as far as possible, from the outside and at both sides.
- Carefully remove the cover in the centre of the front convertible top frame with a sharp-pointed object. Remove the Allen key from the storage compartment.

- Fit the handle of the screwdriver onto the Allen key and insert the latter into the opening specifically designed for the purpose.



- Turn the Allen key to the left as far as it will go, arrow **7**, until the front convertible top frame interlocks with the windscreen frame. The rear convertible top frame is automatically pressed onto the convertible top compartment lid and closes tightly under tension.

 The closing action must be completed, as otherwise damage or injuries can occur. ◀

Contact Service to have the cause of the malfunction remedied.

Slipstream deflector

The slipstream deflector prevents strong currents of air inside the passenger compartment when the convertible top is open, thus increasing comfort when you drive at high speed.

Fitting

- Take the wind deflector out of its protective sleeve and unfold it, arrows **1**.




- Press the upper and lower sections of the wind deflector together until the catch snaps into place, arrow **2**.
- Place both cover-securing pins of one side at the openings specifically designed for the purpose.



- Press the wind deflector against the spring tension into the openings, arrows **3**, and push the free cover-securing pin in the same direction, arrow **4**.
- Place the free cover securing pins at the openings specifically designed for the purpose and let the wind deflector lock into place with the spring tension, arrow **5**.



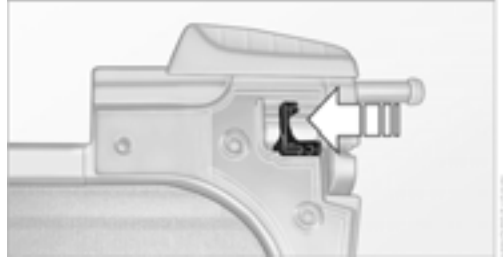
- Fold up the upper part of the wind deflector, arrow **6**.

 With the wind deflector fitted, do not recline the front seats too far back if the seats are to be moved back as far as the rear limit position, otherwise the wind deflector will be damaged. ◀

Removing

Follow the fitting procedure in the reverse order.

Folding up



Slide the red release lever towards the centre of the wind deflector and press the two halves apart.

Adjusting

Vehicle equipment

This chapter describes all standard equipment, national market versions and optional equipment featured in the series. As such, it includes descriptions of equipment that might not be available in a vehicle on account of the optional equipment selected, for example, or the national-market version. This also applies for safety-relevant functions and systems.

Sitting safely

A seated position that suitably reflects your requirements is a vital condition of relaxed driving with a minimum of fatigue. In conjunction with the seat belts, the head restraints and the airbags, the seated position has a major influence on your safety in the event of an accident. You should therefore observe the following notes in order to maintain the protective function of the vehicle's safety systems.

For additional notes on child safety, see page 56.

Airbags



Keep your distance from the airbags.

Always grip the steering wheel on the rim, with your hands in the 3 o'clock and 9 o'clock positions, to minimise the risk of injury to the hands or arms in the event of the airbag being triggered off.

No other persons, pets or objects should be held or permitted to remain between the airbag and yourself.

Do not use the front airbag cover on the front passenger's side as a tray. Make sure that the front passenger adopts a correct seated position, e.g. does not rest feet or legs on the instrument panel, otherwise he/she could sustain leg injuries in the event of the front airbag being triggered off.

Make sure that passengers keep their heads away from the side airbag and do not lean their heads against the cover of the head airbag; otherwise they could be injured should the airbags deploy. ◀

Even if all these instructions are complied with, certain injuries as a result of contact with the airbag cannot be entirely ruled out, depending on the circumstances in which an accident occurs. Occupants with sensitive hearing may be subject to brief and generally temporary impaired hearing caused by the ignition and inflation noise.

The locations of the airbags and additional notes are given on page 96.

Head restraint

Head restraints adjusted to the correct height reduce the risk of injuries to the neck in the event of an accident.



Adjust the head restraint in such a way that its centre is at approximately ear level; otherwise, there is an increased risk of injury should an accident occur. ◀

Head restraints, see page 50.

Seat belt

All occupants should always fasten their seat belts before you set off. The airbags are a complementary safety feature and not a substitute for the seat belts.



Never restrain more than one person with each seat belt. Babies or small children must not travel on the lap of another occupant. Make sure that the belt in the pelvic area is well down on the hips and does not press on the abdomen.


The seat belt must not be worn touching the neck, pass over sharp edges or hard or fragile objects, or become trapped at any point. Pull the seat belt tight and without twisting across

the pelvis and shoulder and keep it as close as possible to the body in order to avoid it slipping over the hips and injuring the stomach in the event of a frontal collision. Avoid wearing bulky clothing and regularly pull the belt in the upper-body area taut, otherwise its restraining effect could be impaired. ◀

Seat belts, see page 52.

Seats


Before adjusting, note

 Do not reposition the driver's seat while the car is in motion. The seat could move unexpectedly, leading to the driver losing control of the vehicle, and possibly resulting in an accident.

Do not recline the driver's or front passenger's seat back too far, otherwise there will be a risk of sliding under the seat belt in an accident, so that the belt loses its protective effect. ◀

Comply with the instructions on head restraint height on page 50 and on damaged seat belts on page 53.

Adjusting manually

 Comply with the instructions above or there will be greater risks to personal safety. ◀



Longitudinal direction

Pull lever 1 and slide the seat to the desired position. After letting go of the lever, move the seat slightly backwards or forwards so that it locks into position properly.

Height

Pull lever 2 and apply your weight to the seat or lift it off, as necessary.

Seat back



Pull lever 3 and apply your weight to the backrest or lift it off, as necessary.

Angle




Pull the lever and apply your weight to the seat or lift it off, as necessary.

Thigh support



Pull the lever and move the thigh support forward or back.

Electrical adjustment

 Comply with the setting instructions above or there will be greater risks to personal safety. ◀



- 1 Longitudinal direction
- 2 Height
- 3 Angle



- 4 Seat back

The head restraints are adjusted manually, see Head restraints on page 50.

Lumbar support



The seat back contour can be altered to provide more support to the curved, lumbar section of the spine.

The upper edge of the pelvis and the spinal column are supported, to encourage an upright but relaxed seated position.

- ▷ To increase or reduce the curvature: press the switch at front or rear.
- ▷ To move the curved section up or down: press the switch at top or bottom.

Backrest width

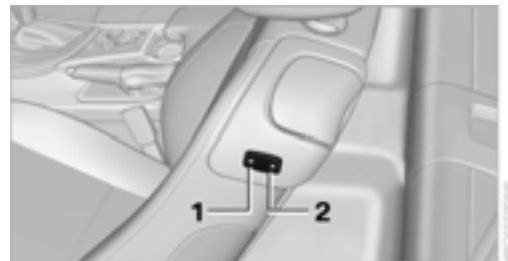


You can change the width of the backrest to suit your individual preferences by adjusting the lateral-support pads.

Press the switch at front or rear.

Backrest width decreases or increases accordingly.

Longitudinal adjustment from the outside/rear




To adjust the longitudinal position of a front seat from outside or from one of the rear seats: with the door open, press the front **1** or rear **2** of the button.

Head restraints

Correctly adjusted head restraint

Head restraints adjusted to the correct height reduce the risk of injuries to the neck in the event of an accident.

 Set head restraints correctly for all occupied seats; if you do not do this, there is an increased risk of injury in the event of an accident. ◀

Height

Set the head restraint to the height at which the midway line is approximately level with the seat occupant's ears.

Distance

Set the head restraint as close as possible to the back of the seat occupant's head.

Front seats

Adjusting height



- ▷ Up: pull.
- ▷ Down: press the button, arrow **1**, and slide the head restraint down.

Removing

Only remove a head restraint if no one will be sitting on the seat in question.

1. Pull up all the way.
2. Press the button, arrow **1**, and pull the head restraint fully out.


Rear seats

Coupé: adjusting height



- ▷ Up: pull.
- ▷ Down: press the button, arrow **1**, and slide the head restraint down.

Convertible: raising and lowering

 Only lower the head restraints if there are no passengers in the rear. Raise lowered head restraints again before allowing passengers to occupy the rear seats. ◀



- ▷ To raise: pull upwards.
- ▷ To lower: press the button, arrow **1**, and slide the head restraint down, arrow **2**.

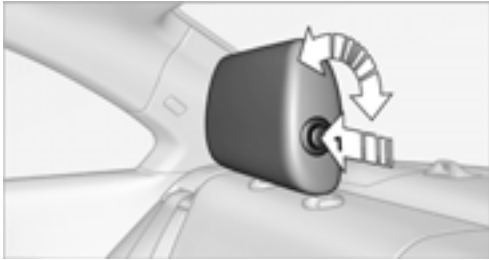
Removing

Only remove a head restraint if no one will be sitting on the seat in question.

1. Pull up all the way.
2. Press the button, arrow **1**, and pull the head restraint fully out.

Coupé: folding head restraints down and back up

Only fold a head restraint down if no one will be sitting on the seat in question. Fold up the head restraints before allowing passengers to occupy the rear seats.



Depending on the equipment version, your car has folding head restraints.

Folding down:

Press the button, arrow 1.

Folding up:

Pull the head restraint.

Access to rear seats

Seat with manual longitudinal adjustment



Convenient entry

The convenient entry feature includes a memory function that stores the seat's longitudinal position as well as the backrest angle.

1. Pull lever 1 and swing the backrest forwards.
2. Push the seat forwards.

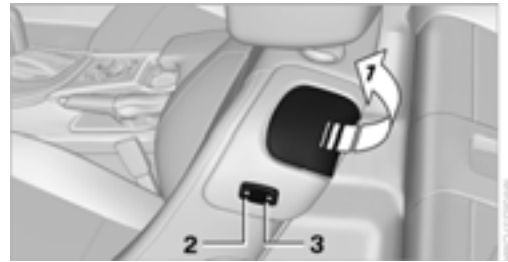
Previous position

Push the seat backwards and swing the backrest back.



When moving the seat back into its rear-most position, take care not to injure anyone or damage any objects behind the seat. Before driving, engage both seats and backrests so that they are locked in place. Otherwise there is a risk of injury due to an unexpected movement. ◀

Seat with electrical longitudinal adjustment



Convenient entry

The convenient entry feature includes a memory function that stores the seat's longitudinal position as well as the backrest angle.

1. Pull lever 1 and swing the backrest forwards.
2. Press and hold down the front 2 of the button until the seat has moved to the desired position.

Previous position

Press the rear 3 of the button until the seat automatically stops at its previous position, and swing back the backrest. If you release the button before the previous position is reached, the seat will stop at its current position.



When sliding the seat backwards, take care not to injure anyone or damage any objects behind the seat. Before driving, engage both seats and backrests so that they are locked in place. Otherwise

there is a risk of injury due to an unexpected movement. ◀

Seat heating



Press the button once per temperature stage. Three LEDs indicate the highest temperature.

To switch off:

Press and do not immediately release the button.

If you continue driving within approx. 15 minutes, the seat heating is automatically activated at the previously set temperature.

If necessary, the temperature is reduced or even switched off entirely in order to prevent battery discharge. The LEDs remain lit.


Seat and mirror memory

You can store and call up two different combinations of driver's-seat and outside-mirror positions.

Settings for the seat back width and lumbar support are not memorised.

Memorising



1. Switch on radio readiness or ignition, see page 62.
2. Adjust the seat and outside mirrors to the desired positions.
3. Press the  button. The LED in the button comes on.
4. Press the desired memory button **1** or **2**: the LED goes out.

Calling up



Do not call up memory while you are driving, as unexpected seat movement could result in an accident. ◀


Convenience function

1. Unlock and open the driver's door or switch on radio readiness, see page 62.
2. Briefly press the desired memory button **1** or **2**.

The adjusting procedure is halted when you press a seat adjustment switch or touch one of the memory buttons.

Safety function

1. Close the driver's door and switch the ignition on or off, see page 62.
2. Press the desired memory button **1** or **2** until the adjusting procedure is completed.

If the  button was pressed accidentally: Press the button again; the LED will go out.

Seat belts

General



Comply with the instructions on page 47, or there will be greater risks to personal safety. ◀

All occupants should always fasten their seat belts before you set off. The airbags are a complementary safety feature and not a substitute for the seat belts.

Number of seat belts

For your safety and that of your passengers, the car is fitted with four seat belts. However, these can only provide the protective effect for which they have been designed if have been fastened properly.



Fastening

The seat belt buckle must be heard to engage. The upper belt anchorage is suitable for adults of any stature as long as they are sitting correctly, see page 48.

Opening

1. Hold onto the belt.
2. Press the red button on the belt buckle.
3. Guide the belt back up to the reel.

Seat belt reminder for driver's and front passenger's seat



The indicator lamp comes on and an acoustic signal sounds. In addition, a message will appear on the control display. Check whether the seat belt has been fastened correctly.

The 'Fasten seat belts' reminder is issued as long as the driver's seat belt has not been fastened. The 'Fasten seat belts' reminder is also activated at road speeds above approx. 8 km/h, approx. 5 mph, if the front passenger's seat belt has not been fastened, if there are objects on the front passenger seat, or if the driver or front passenger unfasten their seat belts.

Damaged seat belts



In the event of stress due to an accident or damage: have the belt system including belt tensioners and any child-restraint systems replaced and the belt anchorage checked. Have this work done by Service only; otherwise there is no guarantee that these restraint devices will function correctly. ◀

Mirrors

Outside mirrors

The outer sections of the mirrors show a larger field of view than the inner sections. In this way, the view to the rear is extended and the blind spot, as it is known, is reduced in size.



Objects reflected in the mirror are closer than they appear. Do not gauge your distance from following traffic based on what you see in the mirror; otherwise there is an increased risk of accident. ◀



- 1 Adjusting
- 2 Switching to the other mirror or parking position function
- 3 Folding mirrors in and out

The setting for the outside mirrors is memorised for the remote control currently in use. When the vehicle is unlocked, the memorised position is called up automatically.

Adjusting manually

The mirrors can also be adjusted manually: by pressing the mirror glass at its edges.

Folding mirrors in and out

At speeds up to approx. 20 km/h, approx. 12 mph, you can fold the mirrors in or out by pressing button **3**. This can be useful in narrow streets, for instance, or to fold the mirrors back out into their correct positions after they were folded in manually. Mirrors that were folded in fold back out automatically when the car reaches a speed of approx. 40 km/h, approx. 25 mph.

Automatic heating

Depending on the outside temperature, both outside mirrors are automatically heated while the engine is running or the ignition switched on.


Passenger-side mirror tilt-down – parking position function

Activating

1. Push the switch to the position for the driver's-side mirror, arrow **1**.



2. Engage reverse gear or selector lever/transmission position R.
The glass of the mirror on the front passenger side tilts slightly down. The road surface close to the car, e.g. the kerb, is thus brought within the driver's field of view in the mirror, for instance while parking the car.

 The parking position function is switched off if you are towing a trailer. ◀

Deactivating

Push the switch to the position for the front passenger's-side mirror, arrow **2**.

Inside mirror



Turn the knob to reduce dazzle from the headlights of cars behind you when driving at night.

Interior and exterior mirrors, automatic-dim




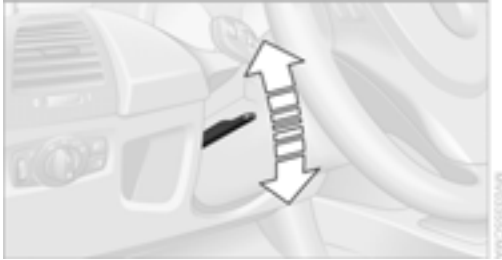
The automatic-dim function of the inside and outside mirrors is controlled by two photocells in the inside mirror. One photocell is in the mirror frame, see arrow; the other is on the back of the mirror.

In order to ensure that the system functions correctly, keep the photocells clean, do not cover the area between the inside mirror and windscreen, and do not affix adhesive labels or stickers of any kind to the windscreen directly in front of the mirror.


Steering wheel

Adjusting

 Do not adjust the steering wheel position while the car is in motion, or an accident may result from any unexpected movement. ◀



1. Fold lever down.
2. Move the steering wheel to the preferred height and angle to suit your seated position.
3. Fold the lever back up.

 Do not use force to swing the lever back up; otherwise the mechanism will be damaged. ◀

Electric steering wheel lock

The steering wheel locks or unlocks automatically when the remote control is removed or inserted, see page 62.

Heated steering wheel



Press the button.


When the steering wheel is being heated, the LED in the button lights up.

Child safety

Vehicle equipment

This chapter describes all standard equipment, national market versions and optional equipment featured in the series. As such, it includes descriptions of equipment that might not be available in a vehicle on account of the optional equipment selected, for example, or the national-market version. This also applies for safety-relevant functions and systems.

Important considerations

 Do not leave children unattended in the vehicle, as they could otherwise endanger themselves and/or other persons by opening the doors, for example. ◀

Coupé


In general, the front passenger's seat and the rear seats are suitable for the installation of universal child restraint systems for all age groups, provided these have been approved for the age group in question.

Convertible


In general, the front passenger's seat and the rear seats are suitable for the installation of universal child restraint systems for all age groups, provided these have been approved for the age group in question.


Always carry children at the rear

Accident research has shown that the safest place for children is on the rear seat.

 Children under 12 years of age or smaller than 150 cm, approx. 5 ft, should always travel in the rear and in suitable child restraint systems, otherwise there is a greater risk of injury in the event of an accident. ◀

children on the front passenger's seat

 If you nevertheless need to use a child restraint system on the front passenger's seat, the front and side airbags for the front passenger must be deactivated, otherwise a child travelling on that seat will face a significant risk of injury if the airbags are triggered off, even if a child restraint system is used. ◀

 The front passenger airbags cannot be deactivated unless the car is fitted with ISOFIX equipment and a keyswitch for the front passenger airbags. ◀

Key switch for front passenger airbags




You can deactivate and subsequently reactivate the front and side airbags for the front passenger by means of a keyswitch. This is located on the front passenger side of the instrument panel.

The front passenger airbags can only be deactivated and reactivated when the vehicle is stationary and with the front passenger's door open.


Deactivating

Insert the key and press inwards.

While the key is pressed inwards, turn it to the OFF position as far as it will go. Once the stop position has been reached, remove the key.

 Ensure that the switch is in the OFF position once the key has been removed, and that the indicator lamp for the front passenger airbags lights up when the ignition is switched on. Otherwise the airbags are not deactivated. ◀

The airbags for the front passenger are deactivated when the switch is in this position. The airbags for the driver remain fully active.

 Once the child restraint system has been removed, immediately reactivate the airbags for the front passenger so that they can deploy correctly in the event of an accident. ◀

Reactivating

Insert the key and press inwards.

While the key is pressed inwards, turn it to the ON position as far as it will go. Once the stop position has been reached, remove the key.

The front passenger airbags are reactivated and can deploy correctly if the need arises.


Functional status



- ▷ The indicator lamp remains on if the front passenger airbags have been deactivated.
- ▷ The indicator lamp does not come on if the front passenger airbags have been activated.

Fitting child restraint systems


Your Service Centre can supply suitable child restraint systems for every age and weight class.

 When selecting, installing and using child restraint systems, observe the manufacturer's instructions, otherwise the protective effect could be impaired.

After an accident, have all parts of the child restraint system and the seat-belt system in question checked and, if necessary, replaced. Have this work carried out by Service only. ◀

Conventional child restraint systems are designed to be secured with a lap belt or with the lap-belt section of a lap-and-shoulder belt. Incorrectly or improperly fitted child restraint systems can increase a child's risk of injury. Always follow the instructions for installing the system precisely.


On the front passenger's seat

 Before fitting a child restraint system to the front passenger's seat, make sure that the front and side airbags for the front passenger are deactivated, otherwise there is an increased risk of injury should the airbags deploy. ◀

Seat position


Before fitting a universal child restraint system to the front passenger's seat, move the seat back and up as far as it will go in order to achieve the best possible routing of the seat belt. Do not adjust the position of seat with the child restraint system fitted.

Backrest width

 The backrest width of the front passenger's seat must be at its widest possible setting. After fitting the child seat, do not change the setting. Otherwise the child seat's stability on the front passenger's seat is limited. ◀

1. Set the backrest to maximum width, see page 49.
2. Fit the child seat.

child seat mountings, ISOFIX

 When you are fitting and using ISOFIX child retention systems, comply with the operating and safety instructions provided by the manufacturer of the system, as otherwise the protective effect can be diminished. ◀

Suitable ISOFIX child restraint systems

Coupé

The following ISOFIX child restraint systems may be used on the allocated seats in your vehicle. The corresponding designations can be found on the child seats.

Rear seats	Front passenger's seat
A - ISO / F3	A - ISO / F3
B - ISO / F2	B - ISO / F2
E - ISO / R1	B1 - ISO / F2X
	D - ISO / R2
	E - ISO / R1

Depending on the size of the child restraint system you might need to push the head restraints up and move the front seat forward.

Convertible

Front passenger's seat: only use ISOFIX child restraint systems with an upper retaining strap.

Rear seats: only use ISOFIX child restraint systems without an upper retaining strap.

The following ISOFIX child restraint systems may be used on the allocated seats in your vehicle. The corresponding designations can be found on the child seats.


Rear seats	Front passenger's seat
A - ISO / F3	A - ISO / F3
B - ISO / F2	B - ISO / F2

Rear seats	Front passenger's seat
E - ISO / R1	B1 - ISO / F2X
	D - ISO / R2
	E - ISO / R1

Depending on the size of the child restraint system you might need to push the head restraints up and move the front seat forward.

Brackets for lower ISOFIX anchors

Before fitting the child seat, pull the belt away from the area around the child seat mountings.

 Make sure that both of the lower ISOFIX anchors are correctly locked in place and that the child restraint system is seated firmly against the backrest, as otherwise the protective effect can be diminished. ◀

Coupé: rear seats



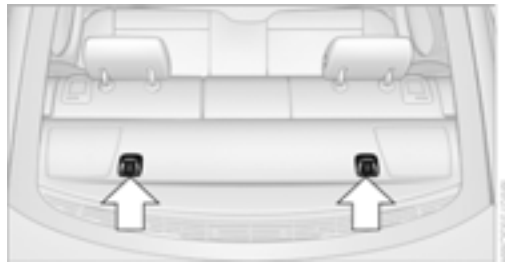
The brackets for the lower ISOFIX anchors are located beneath the labelled caps.

Convertible: rear seats



The brackets for the lower ISOFIX anchors are located at the positions marked by the arrows, in the gap between the seat and the backrest.

Coupé



For ISOFIX child restraint systems with an upper retaining strap there are two additional mounting points, see arrows.

Front passenger's seat



The brackets for the lower ISOFIX anchors are located at the positions marked by the arrows, in the gap between the seat and the backrest.

Convertible




ISOFIX child restraint systems with an upper retaining strap may only be used on the front passenger's seat. The mounting point is located in the gap between the seat cushion and backrest of the rear seats.


Fitting ISOFIX child restraint systems

- 1 Fitting child restraint systems, see the operating instructions for the system.
- 2 Make sure that both ISOFIX anchors lock correctly.

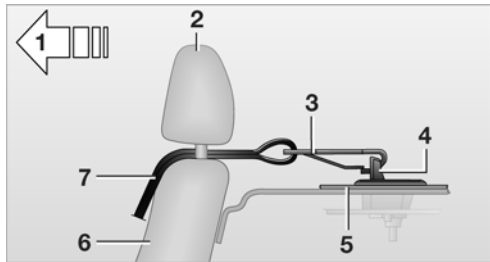
Mounting points for upper ISOFIX retaining strap

 Use the mounting points for the upper ISOFIX retaining strap only to secure child restraint systems; otherwise, the mounting points could be damaged. ◀

Positioning the upper ISOFIX retaining strap

 Make sure that the upper retaining strap does not pass over sharp edges and is not twisted on its path to the upper mounting point. Otherwise the child restraint system cannot protect the child as intended in the event of an accident. ◀

Coupé: rear seats

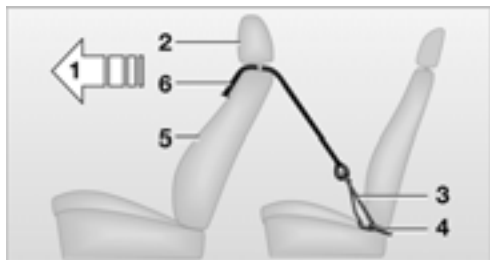


- 1 Direction of travel
- 2 Head restraint
- 3 Hook for the upper retaining strap
- 4 Attachment point
- 5 Rear parcel shelf
- 6 Seat backrest
- 7 Upper retaining strap of the child restraint system

Before use, flip the head restraints upwards if necessary.

1. Push the head restraint upwards.
2. Guide the upper retaining strap between the head restraint posts.
3. Use the hook to clip the retaining strap onto the mounting point.
4. Push the head restraint into its lowermost position.
5. Pull the retaining strap taut.

Convertible: front passenger's seat

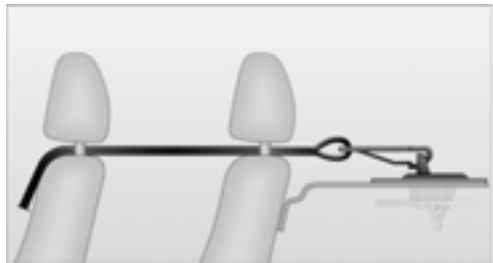


- 1 Direction of travel
- 2 Head restraint


- 3 Hook for the upper retaining strap
 - 4 Mounting point in the gap between the seat cushion and backrest of the rear seat
 - 5 Backrest on front passenger's seat
 - 6 Upper retaining strap of the child restraint system
1. Push the head restraint upwards.
 2. Guide the upper retaining strap between the head restraint posts.
 3. Use the hook to clip the retaining strap onto the mounting point.
 4. Push the head restraint into its lowermost position.
 5. Pull the retaining strap taut.

Coupé: front passenger's seat

When fitting an ISOFIX child restraint system on the front passenger's seat, hook the upper ISO-FIX retaining strap onto the mounting point of the rear seat behind it.



Guide the upper retaining strap between the head restraint posts of the front passenger's seat and the rear seat.

 In such cases, it is a legal offence to transport a person on the rear seat behind the front passenger's seat.


When the rear seat backrest is folded down, do not guide the seat belt through the posts of the rear head restraint, as otherwise the seat belt cannot secure the child restraint system as intended in the event of an accident. ◀

Convertible: front passenger's seat

When fitting an ISOFIX child restraint system on the front passenger's seat, hook the upper retaining strap onto the mounting point of the rear seat behind it.



Guide the upper retaining strap through the head restraint posts.

 In such cases, it is a legal offence to transport a person on the rear seat behind the front passenger's seat. ◀

Driving

Vehicle equipment

This chapter describes all standard equipment, national market versions and optional equipment featured in the series. As such, it includes descriptions of equipment that might not be available in a vehicle on account of the optional equipment selected, for example, or the national-market version. This also applies for safety-relevant functions and systems.


Ignition lock

Inserting the remote control in the ignition lock



Insert the remote control fully into the ignition lock.


- ▷ Radio readiness is switched on. Individual electrical consumers can operate.
- ▷ The electric steering-wheel lock disengages audibly.

 Insert the remote control into the ignition lock before you move the vehicle, otherwise the electric steering wheel lock will not disengage and you will not be able to steer the car. ◀

Comfort Access

With Comfort Access, only insert the remote control in the ignition lock in exceptional cases, see page 38.

Removing the remote control from the ignition lock

 Do not use force to remove the remote control from the ignition lock, as otherwise damage can occur. ◀

Before removing the remote control, first push it in as far as it will go to release the locking mechanism.

- ▷ The ignition is switched off if it was on beforehand.
- ▷ The electric steering-wheel lock engages audibly.


Automatic gearbox

You cannot take out the remote control unless the selector lever is in the P position: Interlock.

Start/stop button



Each time the start/stop button is pressed, radio readiness or the ignition are switched on or off.

 Manual gearbox: press the start/stop button and depress the clutch to start the engine.

Automatic transmission and sports automatic transmission with double clutch: press the start/stop button and depress the brake to start the engine. ◀

Radio readiness


Individual electrical consumers can operate. The time and the outside temperature are displayed in the instrument cluster.

Radio readiness is switched off automatically:

- ▷ When the remote control is removed from the ignition lock
- ▷ When you touch the panel above the door lock, if the car is fitted with Comfort Access, see Locking on page 38.

Ignition on


All electrical consumers are ready for operation. The odometer and trip distance recorder are displayed in the instrument cluster.

 When the engine is switched off, please switch off the ignition and all electrical consumers you are not using in order to preserve the battery. ◀

Radio readiness and ignition off

All indicator lamps, warning lamps and displays in the instrument cluster go out.

Starting the engine

 Never run the engine in enclosed spaces, as inhaling the harmful exhaust gas can lead to loss of consciousness with fatal consequences. The exhaust gas contains carbon monoxide, which is colourless and odourless, but highly toxic. Do not leave the car unattended with the engine running, as this constitutes a hazard.

Before leaving the vehicle with the engine running, place the gearbox in idle or move the selector lever/transmission to position P and fully apply the handbrake to prevent the vehicle from moving. ◀

Do not warm up the engine with the car at a standstill; it is preferable to set off, driving at moderate engine speeds.



Avoid starting, stopping and restarting the engine in rapid succession as well as repeated attempts to start the engine if it does not fire, otherwise unburned or only partially combusted fuel could reach the catalytic converter, which could overheat and be damaged as a result. ◀



Manual gearbox

Remote control in the ignition lock or, with Comfort Access, in the vehicle, see page 38.

1. Depress the brake.
2. Depress the clutch and shift to idle position.
3. Press the start/stop button.

Starting proceeds automatically for a certain time, and ceases automatically as soon as the engine has fired.

Automatic gearbox

Remote control in the ignition lock or, with Comfort Access, in the vehicle, see page 38.

1. Depress the brake.
2. Move the selector lever to position P.
3. Press the start/stop button.

Starting proceeds automatically for a certain time, and ceases automatically as soon as the engine has fired.

Sports automatic transmission with double clutch

Remote control in the ignition lock or, with Comfort Access, in the vehicle, see page 38.

1. Depress the brake.
2. Press the start/stop button.

The engine will start regardless of the current transmission position.

Diesel engine

When the engine is cold and the temperature is below approx. 0 °C/32 °F, starting may be delayed by automatic preheating. The preheating indicator lamp comes on in the instrument cluster and a message appears in the Check Control display.

Stopping the engine



Always take the remote control with you when you leave the vehicle, otherwise children might be able to start the engine, for example. ◀



When parking on an incline, fully apply the handbrake, otherwise the car could begin to roll. On steep uphill and downhill gradients take additional action to secure the vehicle; turn the steering wheel towards the kerb, for example. ◀

Manual gearbox

1. With the car at a standstill, press the start/stop button.
2. Engage first gear or reverse.
3. Fully apply the handbrake.
4. Remove the remote control from the ignition lock, see page 62.

Automatic gearbox

1. With the car at a standstill, move the selector lever to position P.
2. Press the start/stop button.
3. Fully apply the handbrake.
4. Remove the remote control from the ignition lock, see page 62.

Sports automatic transmission with double clutch

1. With the car at a standstill, press the start/stop button.
If position N is engaged when the engine is switched off, a message will appear on the display and a signal will sound.
2. Fully apply the handbrake.
3. Remove the remote control from the ignition lock, see page 62. Transmission position P is engaged automatically.

Automatic start/stop function

The principle

The automatic start/stop function helps you to save fuel and reduce emissions. To do so, the system automatically switches the engine off while the vehicle is stationary, e.g. in a traffic jam or at traffic lights; the ignition remains switched on. As soon as you depress the clutch, the engine starts automatically.

Automatic operation

After every engine start, the automatic start/stop function is on standby. It is activated as soon as you drive forwards at faster than 5 km/h, approx. 3 mph.

Stopping the engine

When rolling to a halt, e.g. at a traffic light, or when the vehicle is stationary, shift to neutral and release the clutch.



With the vehicle stationary, the engine is switched off and the indicator lamp lights up.

The air flow of the ventilation/air conditioner is reduced.

Engine is not switched off

Before the engine is switched off, the system checks whether certain conditions related to safety and comfort have been met.

In the following situations, the engine is not switched off:

- ▷ Outside temperatures below approx. +3 °C/ 37 °F
- ▷ Inside of vehicle in heat-up or cool-down phase
- ▷ With the automatic air-conditioning system switched on, if the windscreen is fogged over
- ▷ High outside temperature and operation of the automatic air conditioning
- ▷ Engine not yet at operating temperature
- ▷ Battery severely depleted, see Vehicle battery on page 254
- ▷ After reversing
- ▷ Driver's seat belt not fastened

Starting the engine



With the gear lever in the idle position, depress the clutch.

The engine is started and the indicator lamp goes out.

Engine starts automatically

The shut-down engine starts automatically, for example in the following cases:

- ▷ The inside of the vehicle heats up strongly and the air conditioner is switched on
- ▷ With the automatic air-conditioning system switched on, if the windows and windscreen begin to fog over
- ▷ Severely depleted battery, see Vehicle battery on page 254
- ▷ Low brake partial vacuum, for example due to depressing the brake a number of times in succession
- ▷ Vehicle rolling away

Safety function



The engine is not started automatically if the driver's seat belt or the engine compartment lid is opened after the engine has been shut down automatically. The

indicator lamp lights up. The engine can only be started by pressing the start/stop button.

Deactivating manually



Press the button.

The orange LED lights up.

With the system disabled, the engine can only be stopped and started using the start/stop button.

Activating manually

Press the button again.

The orange LED goes out.

Malfunction



The warning lamp lights up. A message appears on the control display. The automatic start/stop function no longer switches the engine off automatically. You can continue your journey. Have the system checked.

Handbrake

The handbrake is primarily intended to prevent a stationary car from rolling away; it acts on the rear wheels.

You should also note the information provided in the section about switching off the engine on page 64.

Indicator lamp



The indicator lamp is lit, and when you drive off a signal also sounds. The handbrake is still applied.


Applying

The lever engages by itself.


Releasing



Raise slightly, press the knob and move the lever down.

 In exceptional cases, if the handbrake has to be used to slow or stop the car, do not pull the lever up too hard. Keep the knob on the lever held in all the time.


Otherwise, violent application of the handbrake could lock the rear wheels and cause the rear of the car to skid. ◀

 To prevent corrosion or an imbalance between the brakes on the right and left side, apply the handbrake lightly from time to time when coasting to a standstill, provided that it is safe to do so.

The brake lights do not come on when the handbrake is applied. ◀

Manual gearbox



 When shifting in the 5th/6th gear plane, press the gear lever to the right. Other-

wise the engine could be damaged if you inadvertently shift into 3rd or 4th gear. ◀


Reverse

Engage this only while the car is standing still. When the gear lever is pressed to the left, a slight resistance has to be overcome.

Automatic transmission with Steptronic

In addition to the fully automatic mode, you can perform manual gearshifts with the Steptronic, see page 67.

Stopping the car

 Before leaving the car with the engine running, move the selector lever to position P and apply the handbrake to prevent the car from moving. ◀

Taking out the remote control

In order to remove the remote control from the ignition lock, you must first move the selector lever to position P and switch off the engine: Interlock. Remove the remote control from the ignition lock, see page 62.

Selector lever positions

P R N D M/S + -

Displays in the instrument cluster



The selector lever position is displayed, or the current gear in manual mode, e.g. M4.

Changing selector lever positions

- ▷ With the ignition switched on or the engine running, the selector lever can be moved out of P.
- ▷ Before moving the lever away from P or N with the vehicle stationary, first depress the brake, otherwise the selector lever will refuse to move: Shiftlock.



Apply the brake until you are ready to move off; this will prevent the vehicle creeping when a gear is selected. ◀



A lock prevents the selector lever from being inadvertently moved to the R or P position. To disengage the lock, press the button on the front of the selector lever, see arrow.

P Park

Engage this only while the car is standing still. The driven wheels are locked.

R Reverse

Engage this only while the car is standing still.

N Neutral

You can select this in a car wash, for example. The vehicle will be able to roll.

D Drive, automatic position

Use this position for all normal driving. All forward gears are selected automatically.

Kick-down

Kick-down enables you to achieve maximum performance.

Press the accelerator pedal beyond the increased resistance at the full-throttle position.

Sport programme and M/S manual-shift mode



Move the selector lever to the left, out of D and into the M/S selection gate, to activate the sport programme. This position is recommended for a performance-oriented driving style.

DS is displayed in the instrument cluster.

To deactivate the sport programme or M/S manual mode, move the selector lever to the right into position D.

Changing gears with the selector lever

Move selector lever to the left from position D, into the M/S selection gate:

When you press the selector lever forwards or backwards, the manual mode is activated and Steptronic changes gear.

The selected gear, e.g. M1, is displayed in the instrument cluster.

Upshifts and downshifts are performed only at a suitable engine or road speed; for example, the transmission will not shift down if the resulting engine speed would be too high.

The selected gear is displayed briefly in the instrument cluster, followed by the current gear.

Shifting gears using the shift paddles on the steering wheel

The shift paddles make it possible to change gears quickly as both hands can remain on the steering wheel.

- ▷ When you shift gears in automatic mode via the shift paddles on the steering wheel, the gearbox switches to manual mode.
- ▷ If you do not use the shift paddles to change gears and do not accelerate for a certain amount of time, the gearbox switches back to automatic mode.

▷ If the selector lever is in the M/S gear plane, manual mode remains active. ◀



- ▷ Pull the right-hand shift paddle + briefly to shift up a gear.
- ▷ To shift down, briefly pull the left-hand shift paddle -.

Upshifts and downshifts are performed only at a suitable engine or road speed; for example, the transmission will not shift down if the resulting engine speed would be too high.

The selected gear is displayed briefly in the instrument cluster, followed by the current gear.

Overriding selector-lever lock

The selector lever interlock can be overridden if the selector lever is stuck in position P, in spite of the ignition being switched on, the brake being depressed and the button on the selector lever being pressed:

1. Unclip the gaiter of the selector lever.
2. Pull the gaiter up over the selector lever until the gaiter is inside out.



3. Using the screwdriver from the toolkit, see page 249, press the red lever, see arrow, while moving the selector lever to the desired position at the same time.

7-gear sports automatic transmission with double clutch

The principle

The 7-gear sports automatic transmission with double clutch is an automatic gearbox with two clutches and separate transmissions in which the clutches and gears are operated by an electro-hydraulic system.

The 7-gear sports automatic transmission with double clutch changes gear without interruption of tractive power.

The 7-gear sports automatic transmission with double clutch is operated using the selector lever and two shift paddles on the steering wheel.

It offers you the following functions:

- ▷ Either manual or automatic operation: sequential mode or drive mode
- ▷ Automatic downshift and protection against the wrong gear being selected even in sequential mode
- ▷ Launch control, see page 72
- ▷ Automatic double-clutch

System limitations

The 7-gear sports automatic transmission with double clutch features protection against overheating to safeguard the clutch against extreme stress.



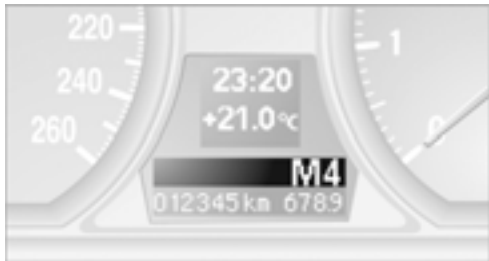
The indicator lamp shows yellow when the gearbox becomes too hot. Avoid high engine load and frequent driving off. If the transmission overheats, the indicator lamp will light up red and power will cease to be transmitted to the engine. The transmission has to cool down before driving can be resumed.

Avoid frequent, aggressive driving off. On upward inclines, do not hold the vehicle using the accelerator and slipping clutch, as otherwise the gearbox can overheat.

Transmission positions

P R N D M/S + -

Displays in the instrument cluster



The transmission position and the gear selected are displayed, e.g. M4.

Engaging transmission positions

- ▷ You can only move the vehicle out of P if the engine is running: Interlock.
- ▷ Before moving the lever away from P or N with the vehicle stationary, first press the brake, otherwise the desired gearshift will not be performed: Shiftlock.

Engaging N, D, R



Nudge the selector lever to move it in the desired direction; you might pass a resistance point. From P or in R, simultaneously press button 1.

The selected transmission position is also displayed on the selector lever.

As soon as you let go of the selector lever, it returns to the central position.

Engaging P



Press the **P** button.

P Park

Engage this only while the car is standing still. The rear wheels are locked.

▶ P is engaged if you open the driver's door whilst the engine is running, have not fastened your seat belt and then press neither the brake nor the accelerator pedal. Before leaving the vehicle, check that the automatic transmission is engaged in position P. Otherwise, the vehicle could move. ◀

▶ P is engaged automatically as soon as you switch off the engine unless N is


engaged and the remote control is in the ignition lock, see page 62. Regardless of the transmission position, P is engaged as soon as you take the remote control out of the ignition lock. ◀

R Reverse

Engage this only while the car is standing still.

N Neutral

You can select this in a car wash, for example. The vehicle will be able to roll.

 N remains engaged after you switch off the engine if you leave the remote control in the ignition lock. Use this function e.g. in a car wash, see page 246. ◀

D Drive mode

In Drive mode, all forward gears are changed automatically.

Kick-down

For rapid acceleration, e.g. when overtaking, depress the accelerator pedal beyond the resistance point. You achieve maximum acceleration.

Sport programme and M/S manual-shift mode



Move the selector lever to the left, out of D, to activate the sport programme. This position is recommended for a performance-oriented driving style.

The selected gear, e.g. S1, is displayed in the instrument cluster.

When you press the selector lever forwards or backwards, the manual mode is activated and Steptronic changes gear.

The selected gear, e.g. M1, is displayed in the instrument cluster.

In the following situations the 7-gear sports automatic transmission with double clutch will help you to make the right driving decisions:

- ▷ Upshifts and downshifts are performed only at a suitable engine or road speed; for example, the gearbox cannot shift down if the resulting engine speed would be too high.
- ▷ First gear is selected automatically on stopping.
- ▷ Shortly before you reach the minimum speed for the gear that is selected, the gearbox shifts down without any action required on your part.

Rapid downshifting: you can even skip a few gears in sequential mode to achieve optimum acceleration. To do so, press the accelerator pedal beyond the resistance point.

To return to Automatic, move the selector lever to the left.

Gear change

Use the selector lever or the shift paddles to shift up or down. You do not need to take your foot off the accelerator.

Via the selector lever

- ▷ To shift up, pull the selector lever back.
- ▷ To shift down, push the lever forwards.

Using the shift paddles on the steering wheel

You can also shift manually using two shift paddles on the steering wheel. The shift paddles make it possible to change gear quickly, as both hands can remain on the steering wheel.

- ▷ When you shift gears in automatic mode via the shift paddles on the steering wheel, the gearbox switches to manual mode.

- ▶ If you do not use the shift paddles to change gear and do not accelerate for a certain amount of time, the transmission switches back to automatic mode if the selector lever is in D.



- ▶ Pull the right-hand shift paddle + briefly to shift up a gear.
- ▶ To shift down, briefly pull the left-hand shift paddle –.

Driving Dynamics Control

Driving Dynamics Control enables you to get an even more sporty response from your BMW at the touch of a button:

- ▶ The engine speed range is utilised to the maximum.
- ▶ Gear changes are quicker.
- ▶ The engine responds more spontaneously to accelerator pedal movements.

Activating the system



Press the SPORT button.
The LED in the button comes on.

Deactivating the system

- ▶ Press the SPORT button again.
- ▶ Stopping the engine
The LED in the button goes out.

Unlocking the parking lock manually

▶ In the event of a power supply interruption, e.g. if the battery is flat or disconnected or there is an electrical fault, the transmission lockout must be unlocked manually, as otherwise the rear wheels are blocked and the vehicle cannot be towed. ◀

Only unlock the transmission lockout manually for towing. Engage the handbrake firmly beforehand so that the vehicle cannot roll. After parking the vehicle, lock the transmission lockout again.

Releasing


1. Unclip the gaiter of the selector lever.
2. Pull the gaiter up over the selector lever until the gaiter is inside out.




3. Insert the Allen wrench from the toolkit, see page 249, into the opening, arrow 1.



- Turn the Allen wrench as far as the stop, arrow **2**. The transmission lockout is released.

 Do not turn the Allen wrench in the opposite direction; to do so would risk damaging the mechanism. ◀

- Pull the Allen wrench out of the opening.

 The parking lock should be locked again once the vehicle has come to a stop. Otherwise there is a danger that the vehicle will roll away. ◀

Locking

- Press the button, see arrow. The transmission lockout is locked again.




- Clip the selector lever sleeve back into place.
- Fully apply the handbrake.

Starting assistance and towing, page [257](#) onwards.

Launch control

Launch Control permits optimum acceleration of the car on high-grip surfaces.


 Do not use Launch Control too often, as otherwise the high load on the vehicle leads to premature component wear. ◀

Launch control is available to you when the engine is at operating temperature, in other words once you have been driving uninterrupted for at least 10 km, approx. 6 miles.

- With the engine running, depress the brake with your left foot.
- Activating Dynamic Traction Control DTC, see page [92](#).
- Activating Driving Dynamics Control, see page [71](#).
- With the vehicle stationary, activate manual mode and select 1st gear.
- Depress the accelerator pedal with your right foot, passing beyond the resistance point. The engine speed for pulling away is established. A flag symbol appears in the instrument cluster.
- The vehicle accelerates when you release the brake pedal. Keep the accelerator pedal fully depressed.
- Upshifting is automatic as long as the accelerator pedal remains depressed beyond the resistance point.

Launch Control cannot be called up a second time until a certain distance has been covered.

Launch control is not available during running in, see page [122](#).

 To maintain vehicle stability, always activate DSC where possible. ◀

Flashing turn indicators/ headlight flasher




- 1 High-beam headlights
- 2 Headlight flasher
- 3 Flashing turn indicators

Indicating a turn

Press the lever beyond the pressure point.

To cancel it manually, press the lever as far as the pressure point.

 Unusually rapid flashing of the indicator lamp indicates that a turn indicator bulb has failed. In trailer operation, the light might also indicate that a turn indicator bulb on the trailer has failed. ◀

Indicating a turn briefly

Press and hold the lever as far as the pressure point for as long as you wish to indicate a turn.

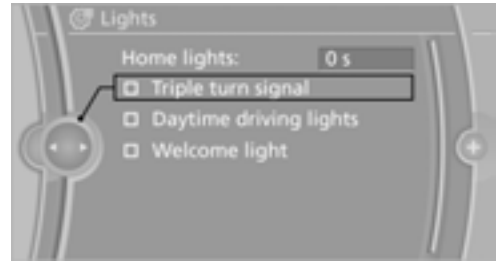
Triple turn signal

Press the lever as far as the pressure point. The turn indicators flash three times.

You can activate or deactivate this function:


1. "Settings"
2. "Lights"


3. "Triple turn signal"



The setting is memorised for the remote control currently in use.

Wiper system

 Do not switch on the wipers if they are frozen; this can damage the wiper blades and the wiper system motor. ◀

 Do not use the wipers when the windscreen is dry; this can cause premature wear of or damage to the wiper blades. ◀



- 1 Switching on wipers
- 2 Switching off wipers or flick-wipe
- 3 Activating/deactivating intermittent wipe or rain sensor
- 4 Cleaning windscreen and headlights
- 5 Setting speed for intermittent wipe or sensitivity of the rain sensor

Switching on wipers

Press the lever upwards, arrow 1.

The lever returns to the home position when released.

Normal wiper speed

Press once.

The wipers switch to intermittent wipe when the vehicle is stationary.

Fast wiper speed

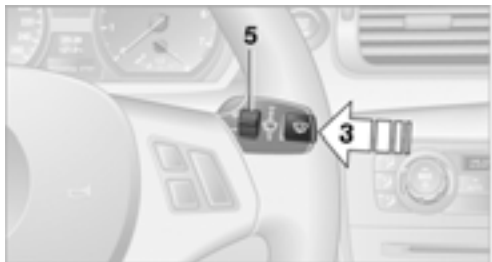
Press twice or press beyond the pressure point. The wipers switch to normal speed when the vehicle is stationary.

Intermittent wipe or rain sensor

If the car is not fitted with a rain sensor, the intermittent-wipe time is a preset.

The rain sensor automatically regulates the windscreen wipers in accordance with the rain intensity. The rain sensor is located on the windscreen, directly in front of the inside mirror.

Activating intermittent operation or rain sensor




Press the button, arrow 3. The LED in the button comes on.

Setting speed for intermittent wipe or sensitivity of the rain sensor

Turn knurled wheel 5.

Deactivating intermittent operation or rain sensor

Press button again, arrow 3. The LED goes out.


 Deactivate the rain sensor in an automatic vehicle wash, to prevent the vehicle's wipers being activated inadvertently and damaged. ◀

Cleaning windscreen and headlights

Pull the lever, arrow 4.

Fluid from the washer fluid reservoir is sprayed on to the windscreen and the wipers are operated briefly.

When the vehicle's lights are switched on, the headlights are cleaned simultaneously at practical intervals.


 Only operate the washer systems and cleaning equipment if you are certain that the fluid will not freeze to the windscreen and interfere with the view ahead. Anti-freeze should therefore be added to the fluid, see Washer fluid.

Do not run the washer systems if the washer fluid reservoir is empty, or the washer pump will be damaged. ◀


Windscreen washer jets

The windscreen washer jets are heated automatically while the engine is running or the ignition switched on.

Washer fluid

 Screenwash for the washer fluid is highly flammable. For this reason, keep it away from sources of sparks or flame, only in the sealed original container, and out of reach for children, as otherwise there is a risk of injury. Comply with the instructions on the container. ◀

Filler neck for washer fluid

 Only top up washer fluid when the engine has cooled down and then close the lid completely. This prevents contact between the washer fluid and hot engine components. Otherwise, if the fluid is spilled or leaks, there is a risk of fire and personal safety is endangered. ◀



All washer jets are served by a single reservoir. When filling with a mixture of glass cleaner concentrate and tap water, to which screenwash has been added if required, always follow the manufacturer's instructions.

Do not fill with undiluted glass cleaner concentrate or clean water; this may damage the wiper system.

Do not mix glass cleaner concentrates from different manufacturers as this may lead to the washer jets becoming blocked.

Capacity

Approx. 6 litres, approx. 10.6 pints.

Cruise control

The principle

You can activate cruise control once you reach a speed of approx. 30 km/h or 20 mph. The car then memorises and maintains the speed that you specify using the lever on the steering column.



Do not use cruise control if driving at constant speed is prevented by adverse conditions, e.g. by winding roads, heavy traffic or poor surface conditions such as snow, rain, ice or loose material. Otherwise you could lose control of the vehicle and cause an accident as a result. ◀

One lever for all functions



- 1 Memorising and maintaining speed or accelerating
- 2 Memorising and maintaining speed or decelerating
- 3 Deactivating cruise control
- 4 Recalling a speed memorised beforehand

Maintaining current speed

Tap the lever, arrow **1**, or pull briefly, arrow **2**. The car's current speed is memorised and maintained. It is briefly displayed in the instrument cluster.

If engine braking alone is insufficient on a downhill gradient, the set speed may be exceeded. It may in turn prove impossible to maintain speed on uphill gradients if current engine power output is insufficient.

Increasing speed

Tap the lever repeatedly, arrow **1**, until the desired speed is reached. Each time the lever is tapped, the car's speed increases by approx. 1 km/h or 1 mph.

Accelerating using the lever

Press the lever, arrow **1**, until the desired speed is reached.

The car accelerates without the accelerator pedal being pressed. The system memorises and maintains the speed.

Reducing speed

Pull the lever repeatedly, arrow **2**, until the desired speed is reached.

Functions analogous to increasing speed or accelerating, except that the speed is decreased.

Deactivating cruise control

Tap the lever upwards or downwards, arrow **3**.

The system is also deactivated automatically if:

- ▷ The brakes are applied
- ▷ A gear is engaged or neutral is selected (manual transmission)
- ▷ Selector lever position N is engaged (automatic transmission)
- ▷ N is engaged on the sports automatic transmission with double clutch
- ▷ The set speed is exceeded or undershot for a prolonged period, e.g. when the accelerator pedal is pressed
- ▷ DSC is in control

Recalling a speed memorised beforehand

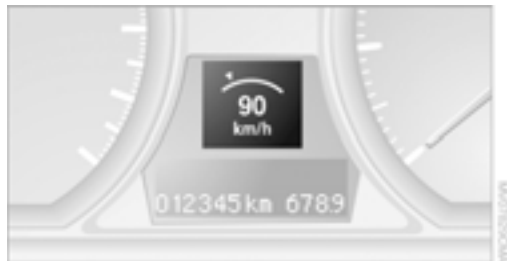
Press the button, arrow **4**.

The speed last memorised is regained and maintained.

The memorised speed is displayed briefly in the instrument cluster.

The memorised speed is deleted when the ignition is switched off.

Display in the instrument cluster



When you store the currently driven speed or call up the memorised speed, the respective speed is displayed briefly in the instrument cluster.

Everything under control

Vehicle equipment

This chapter describes all standard equipment, national market versions and optional equipment featured in the series. As such, it includes descriptions of equipment that might not be available in a vehicle on account of the optional equipment selected, for example, or the national-market version. This also applies for safety-relevant functions and systems.

Distance recorder, outside temperature display, clock



- 1 Knob in the instrument cluster
- 2 Outside temperature and clock
- 3 Odometer and trip distance recorder

Knob in the instrument cluster

- ▷ When the ignition is on, pushing the knob resets the trip distance recorder
- ▷ When the ignition is off, pushing the knob displays the time, outside temperature and odometer for a short time

Units of measure

To select the respective units of measure, km or miles for the odometer as well as °C or °F for the outside temperature, see Units of measure on page 82.


The setting is memorised for the remote control currently in use.

Time, outside temperature display

Setting the clock, see page 84.

Outside temperature warning

When the displayed temperature falls to +3 °C/ 37 °F, a signal sounds and a warning lamp comes on. There is an increased risk of ice.

 Sheet ice can also form at temperatures above +3 °C/37 °F. You should therefore drive carefully over bridges and shaded roads; otherwise there is an increased risk of accident. ◀

Odometer and trip distance recorder

Resetting trip distance recorder:

With the ignition switched on, press knob **1** in the instrument cluster.

Car parked

If you still want to view the time, outside temperature and odometer reading briefly after the remote control has been taken out of the ignition lock:

Press knob **1** in the instrument cluster.

Revolution counter



Never force the engine speed up into the red warning field, see arrow. In this zone the fuel supply is interrupted to protect the engine.

Engine oil temperature



With the engine at operating temperature, the engine oil temperature lies between approx. 100 °C/212 °F and approx. 120 °C/248 °F.

If the engine oil temperature is too high, a message appears on the control display.

Fuel gauge



Fuel tank capacity:

- ▷ Petrol engine: approx. 53 litres, approx. 11.7 gal
- ▷ Diesel engine: approx. 51 litres, approx. 11.2 gal

Notes on refuelling, see page 228.


If the vehicle is at an angle for some time, for example on a long mountain road, the value in the display may fluctuate to some extent.

Fuel gauge on 135i: in the speedometer.

Reserve

Once the fuel level has fallen to the reserve zone, a message appears on the control display for a short time and the remaining operating range is displayed on the on-board computer. If the remaining range is less than approx. 50 km, approx. 30 miles, the message is displayed permanently on the control display.

A dynamic driving style, e.g. taking corners at high speeds, can impair the engine's functions.

 If the range is below 50 km, approx. 30 miles, refuel the vehicle, otherwise the engine's functions are not assured and damage may occur. ◀

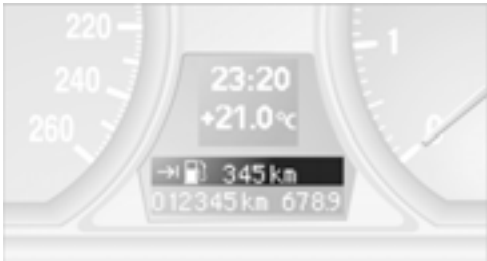
On-board computer

Displays in the instrument cluster

Calling up information



Press the button in the turn indicator lever.



The following items of information are displayed in the order listed:

- ▷ Range
- ▷ Average speed
- ▷ Average fuel consumption
- ▷ Current fuel consumption
- ▷ No information

To set the corresponding units of measure, see Units of measure on page 82.

In parallel, gearshift recommendations to reduce fuel consumption can be displayed, see Gearshift point display on page 80.

Range

This display indicates how far the vehicle can probably be driven on the fuel remaining in the tank. The range is calculated on the basis of the way the car has been driven over the past

30 km, approx. 20 miles, and the amount of fuel currently in the tank.



If the remaining operating range is below 50 km, approx. 30 miles, it is imperative to add fuel, otherwise the engine's functions are not assured and damage may occur. ◀

Average speed

The calculation of average speed ignores any stationary periods where the engine was switched off.

With the journey computer, see page 80, you can have the average speed for another trip displayed.

To reset the average speed: press the button in the flashing turn indicator lever for approx. 2 seconds.

Average fuel consumption

The average fuel consumption is calculated for the period since the engine was last started.

With the journey computer, see page 80, you can have the average consumption for another trip displayed.

To reset the average consumption reading: press the button in the flashing turn indicator lever for approx. 2 seconds.

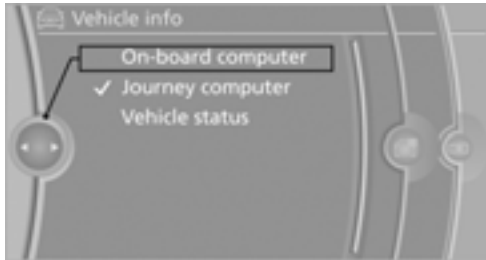
Current fuel consumption

Shows the momentary fuel consumption. This enables you to check how economical and environmentally friendly your current driving style is.

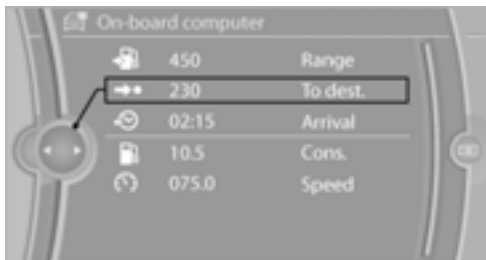
Displays on the control display

You can also call up the on-board computer via iDrive.

1. "Vehicle information"
2. "On-board computer" or "Journey computer"

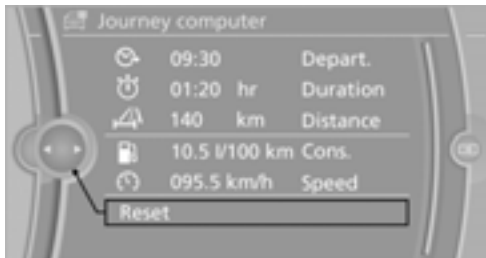


"On-board computer" Displays:



- ▷ Range
- ▷ Distance to destination
- ▷ Anticipated arrival time if a destination has been entered in the navigation system.

"Journey computer" Displays:



- ▷ Departure time
- ▷ Trip duration
- ▷ Distance to be driven

For both displays:

- ▷ The average speed and
- ▷ Average fuel consumption are displayed.

Resetting fuel consumption and speed

You can reset the values for average speed and average consumption:

1. Select the relevant menu entry.
2. Press the controller again to confirm your selection.

Resetting the journey computer

You can reset all the values:

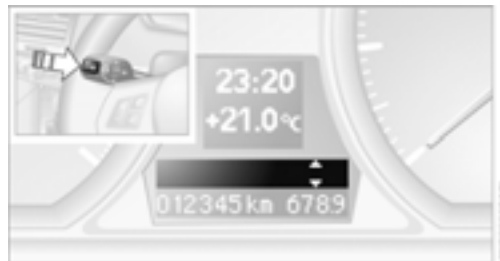
1. "Vehicle information"
2. "Journey computer"
3. "Reset"

Gearshift point display

The principle

This system recommends the gear that allows optimal fuel economy in the current driving situation. Whenever that gear is different from the one currently engaged, you are prompted to shift up or down, respectively.

Enabling/disabling the system



If no information is displayed in the on-board computer, see page 79, press the BC button on the turn indicator lever for approx. 3 seconds.

Displays



- 1 You are driving in the gear allowing optimal fuel economy
- 2 Fuel economy will increase if you shift up to the displayed gear
- 3 Fuel economy will increase if you shift down to the displayed gear

- 3 Fuel economy will increase if you shift down to the displayed gear

In parallel, you can call up any information from the on-board computer as usual.

Settings and information

Operating principle



- 1 Button for:
 - ▷ Selecting display
 - ▷ Setting values
- 2 Button for:
 - ▷ Confirming selected display or set values
 - ▷ Calling up computer information 79
- 3 When the lights are on: instrument lighting brightness 105
- 4 Calling up Check Control 86
- 5 Checking engine oil level 239
- 6 Setting the clock 84
- 7 Setting the date 86
- 8 Viewing Next Service indicator 82

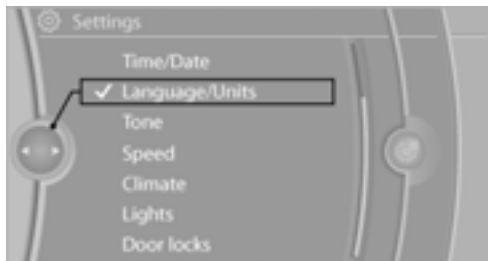
Exiting displays

The outside-temperature reading and the time reappear when you press button **2** or if you make no entries within approx. 15 seconds. If required, complete the current setting first.

Units of measure

You can change the units of measure for fuel consumption, distance, temperature and pressure.

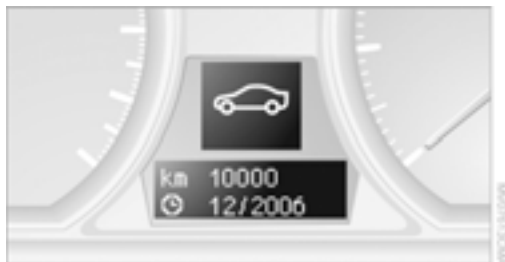
1. "Settings"
2. "Language/Units"



3. Select the desired menu item.
4. Select the desired unit.

The settings are saved for the remote control currently in use.

Next Service indicator

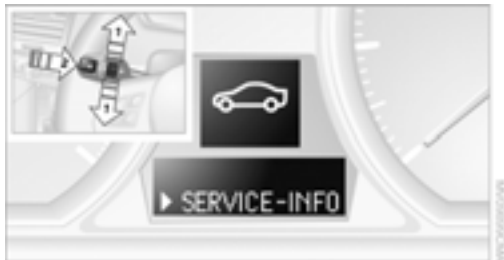


The remaining driving distance and the date of the next scheduled service are displayed briefly immediately after you start the engine or switch on the ignition.



Your service advisor can read out the scope of service requirements currently required from the remote control. ◀

For certain maintenance operations, you can view the respective distance remaining or due date individually in the instrument cluster.



1. Switch on the ignition, see page 62.
2. Press button **1** in the turn indicator lever up or down repeatedly until the appropriate symbol appears in the display, accompanied by the word "SERVICE-INFO".
3. Press button **2**.
4. Use button **1** to step through the individual service items.

Possible displays



- 1 Button for selecting functions
- 2 Service requirements
- 3 Engine oil
- 4 Roadworthiness test

- 5 Front brake pads
- 6 Rear brake pads
- 7 Brake fluid

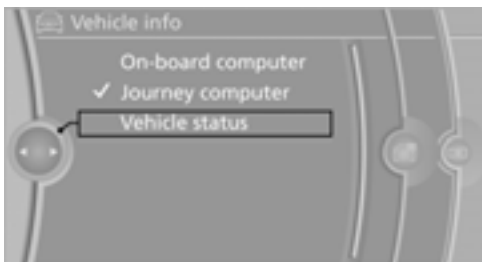
The sequence of displayed services may vary. Data on the next service is displayed first.

Further information

Detailed information on the service requirements

You can call up further information on the scope of maintenance on the control display.

1. "Vehicle information"
2. "Vehicle status"



3. "Service required"

Essential maintenance routines and any statutory inspections required are displayed.




You can call up more information about each entry:

Select the entry and press the controller.

To exit the menu:

Tilt the controller to the left.

Symbols

-  No servicing is currently needed.
-  Servicing or an inspection required by law is due.
-  Servicing is overdue.

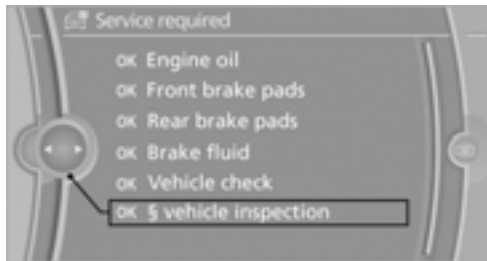
Entering deadlines for statutory inspections

Make sure that the date on the control display is always set correctly, see page 86, otherwise the Condition Based Service CBS cannot function correctly.

1. "Vehicle information"
2. "Vehicle status"
3. "Service required"



4. "§ vehicle inspection"



5. Call up date input.
6. "Date:"
7. Make the settings.
8. Press the controller to adopt the setting. The year is selected.
9. Turn the controller to make the adjustment.
10. Press the controller to adopt the setting. The date input is memorised.

To exit the menu:
Tilt the controller to the left.

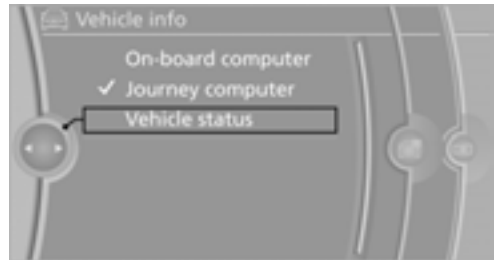
More information on the BMW Maintenance System can be found on page 243.

Automatic Service notification

Data on the service status of or statutory inspections for the vehicle is transmitted to Service automatically when a corresponding due date is imminent.

It is possible to check when Service was notified.

1. "Vehicle information"
2. "Vehicle status"



3. "Options"
4. "Last Teleservice Call"

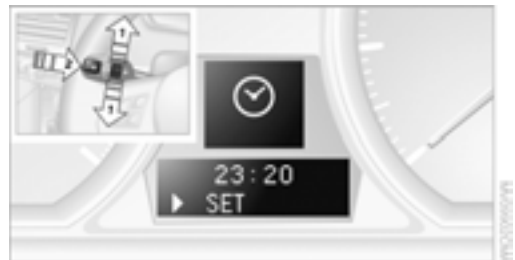
Clock

The settings are saved for the remote control currently in use, see also Personal Profile on page 30.

Setting the clock

In the instrument cluster

To set the 12h/24h format, see Setting the time format on page 85.



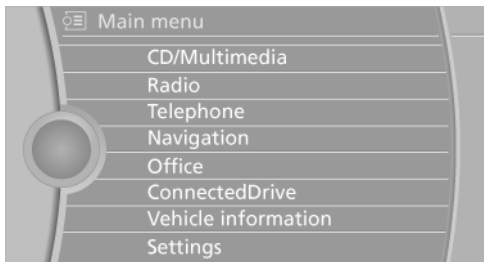
1. Press button 1 in the turn indicator lever up or down repeatedly until the appropriate

symbol appears in the display, accompanied by the time and the word "SET".

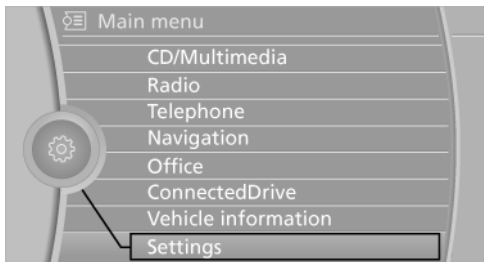
2. Press button **2**.
3. Use button **1** to set the hours.
4. Press button **2** to confirm the entry.
5. Use button **1** to set the minutes.
6. Press button **2** to confirm the entry.
7. Press button **2**.
The system accepts the new time.

Via iDrive

1. Press the **MENU** button.
The main menu is displayed.

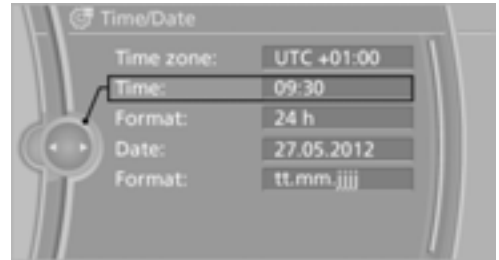


2. "Settings"



Setting the clock

1. "Settings"
2. "Time/Date"



3. "Time:"
4. Turn the controller until the desired hours are displayed and press the controller.
5. Turn the controller until the desired minutes are displayed and press the controller.

The time is stored.

Setting the time format

1. "Settings"
2. "Time/Date"
3. "Format:"
4. Select the desired format and press the controller.

The time format is memorised.

Setting the time zone

1. "Settings"
2. "Time/Date"
3. "Time zone:"
4. Select the required time zone.

The time zone is stored.

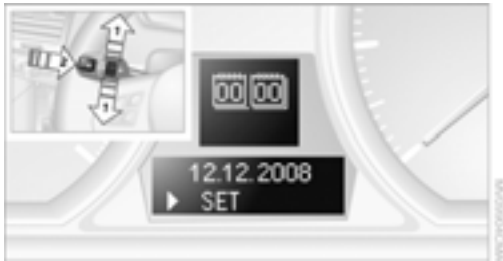
Date

The settings are saved for the remote control currently in use, see also Personal Profile on page 30.

Adjusting the date

In the instrument cluster

To set the dd/mm or mm/dd date format, see Setting the date format below.



1. Press button **1** in the turn indicator lever up or down repeatedly until the appropriate symbol appears in the display, accompanied by the date and the word "SET".
2. Press button **2**.
3. Use button **1** to set the day of the month.
4. Press button **2** to confirm the entry.
5. Set the month and the year in the same way.
6. Press button **2**.
The system accepts the new date.

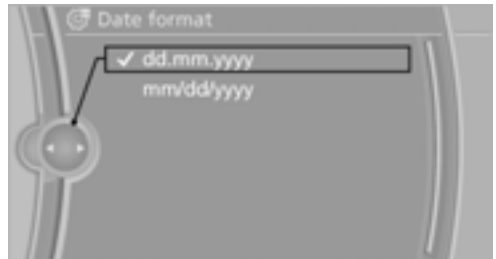
Via iDrive

1. "Settings"
2. "Time/Date"
3. "Date:"
4. Turn the controller until the desired day is displayed and press the controller.
5. Make the setting for month and year accordingly.

The date is memorised.

Setting the date format

1. "Settings"
2. "Time/Date"
3. "Format:"



4. Select the desired format.
The date format is memorised.

Check Control

The principle

The Check Control monitors vehicle functions and alerts you to any faults in the systems monitored. Check Control messages include indicator and warning lamps in the instrument cluster, a signal, if applicable, and text messages at the top of the control display.


Indicator and warning lamps



Indicator and warning lamps can light up in a variety of combinations and colours.

Some lights are checked for proper functioning and thus come on briefly when the engine starts or the ignition is switched on.



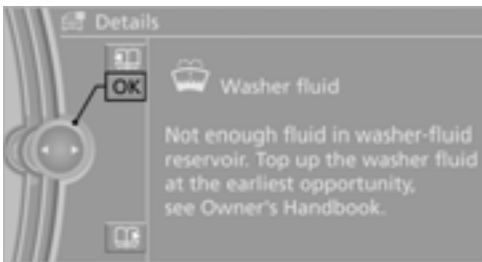
 indicates that Check Control messages have been stored. You can subsequently call up the Check Control messages, see page 87.

Text messages

Text messages at the top of the control display explain the meaning of the indicator and warning lamps being shown.

Detailed text messages

Via Check Control, you can call up additional information on the control display, e.g. regarding the cause of a fault and the corresponding measures to be taken.





In the case of urgent messages, the text is displayed automatically.

To exit the display:

Select "OK" and press the controller.

Symbols

The following functions can be selected within the supplementary text messages dependent upon the Check Control message.

- ▷  "Service request"
Contact service partner.
- ▷  "BMW Mobile Care"
Contact BMW Roadside Assistance.

Hiding Check Control messages



Press the button on the turn indicator lever.

- ▷ Some Check Control messages are displayed permanently and remain until the fault has been repaired. If there are a number of malfunctions simultaneously, the messages are displayed in succession. These messages can be hidden for approx. 8 seconds. They are then displayed again automatically.



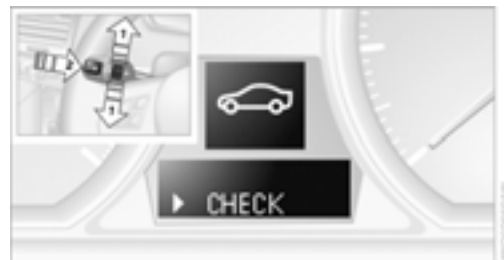
Depending on your vehicle's equipment, they may be marked with the symbol shown here.

- ▷ Other Check Control messages are automatically hidden after approx. 20 seconds. They remain saved and can be displayed again.



Depending on your vehicle's equipment, they may be marked with the symbol shown here.

Displaying Check Control messages stored in memory



1. Press button 1 in the turn indicator lever up or down repeatedly until the appropriate

symbol appears in the display, accompanied by the word "CHECK".

2. Press button **2**.
"CHECK OK" appears if there are no Check Control messages. If a Check Control message has been stored, the corresponding light is shown. It is accompanied by a text message on the control display.
3. Press button **1** to check for other messages.
4. Press button **2**.
The display again shows the outside temperature and the time.

Via iDrive

1. "Vehicle information"
2. "Vehicle status"
3. "Check Control"



4. Select a text message.

Speed limit

You can enter a speed at which you are to be alerted by means of a Check Control message. You can use this feature e.g. to ensure that you do not exceed a municipal speed limit.

A renewal of this reminder will not be given until you have undercut the limit speed once by at least 5 km/h, approx. 3 mph.

Displaying, setting or changing the speed limit

1. "Settings"
2. "Speed"
3. "Warning at:"

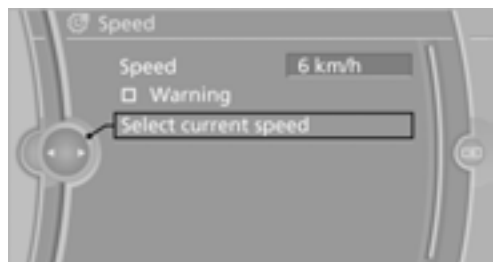


4. Turn the controller until the desired speed is displayed.
5. Press controller.

The speed limit is memorised.

Memorising actual speed as limit value

1. "Settings"
2. "Speed"
3. "Select current speed"

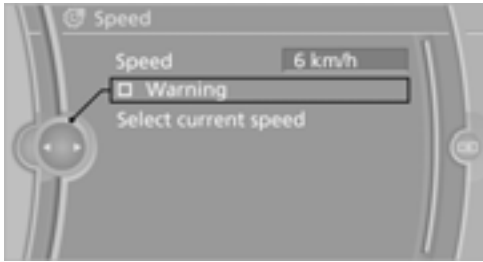


The actual speed is memorised as the limit value.

Activating/deactivating the speed limit

1. "Settings"
2. "Speed"

3. "Warning"



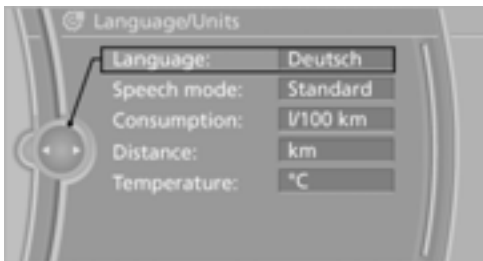
4. Press the controller.

Settings on the control display

Language of the control display

Setting the language

1. "Settings"
2. "Language/Units"
3. "Language:"



4. Select the desired language.

The setting is memorised for the remote control currently in use.

Setting the speech dialogue

Toggle between a standard and short dialogue.

1. "Settings"
2. "Language/Units"
3. "Speech mode:"

4. Select the desired dialogue.



The setting is memorised for the remote control currently in use.

Brightness of the control display

The brightness is automatically adjusted to ambient light conditions. However, you can adjust the basic setting.

1. "Settings"
2. "Control display"
3. "Brightness"



4. Turn the controller until the desired setting is obtained.

5. Press controller.

The setting is memorised for the remote control currently in use. With bright surroundings, the brightness control might not be immediately perceptible.

Technical features for driving comfort and safety

Vehicle equipment


This chapter describes all standard equipment, national market versions and optional equipment featured in the series. As such, it includes descriptions of equipment that might not be available in a vehicle on account of the optional equipment selected, for example, or the national-market version. This also applies for safety-relevant functions and systems.

Park Distance Control PDC

Principle

PDC assists you with manoeuvring into a parking space. Acoustic signals and a visual indicator warn you of the presence of an object in front of or behind your car. Four ultrasonic sensors in each bumper measure the distance to the nearest object.

The sensors cover a range of approx. 2 m, approx. 7 ft. However, an acoustic warning does not sound until an object is approx. 60 cm, approx. 2 ft, from the front sensors or rear corner sensors, and approx. 1.50 m, approx. 5 ft from the rear centre sensors.

 PDC is a parking aid which is capable of registering objects approached at low speed, as is usually the case when the car is being parked. Avoid approaching an object rapidly, otherwise the system may be unable to alert you in sufficient time due to the physical principles involved. ◀

If the car is towing a trailer, the rear sensors will be unable to supply meaningful signals. They therefore do not light up.

Automatic activation

With the engine running or the ignition switched on, the system is activated after approx.

1 second when you engage reverse gear or move the selector lever to position R. Wait briefly before starting to drive; this allows the system to become active.

Switching off automatically

If you drive for approx. 50 m, approx. 55 yd, or at a speed exceeding approx. 30 km/h, approx. 20 mph, the system is deactivated and the LED goes out.

Switching on manually

In the case of forward parking, the sensors have to be switched on manually in order to be able to warn you of the presence of an object in front of or behind your vehicle.



Press the button; the LED comes on.

Switching off manually

Press the button again; the LED will go out.

Audible warning signals

An intermittent tone indicates the position of an object as the car approaches it. For example, the tone sounds at the rear if the system detects an object behind the car. The closer the car approaches the object, the more rapid the sequence of signals. When the distance to a detected object is less than approx. 30 cm, approx. 12 in, the signal becomes continuous.

An intermittent tone is interrupted after approx. 3 seconds:

- ▷ If you stop in front of an object that was detected by only one of the corner sensors
- ▷ If you are driving parallel to a wall

Malfunction



The warning lamp lights up. A message appears on the control display. PDC has failed. Have the system

checked.

As a precautionary measure, keep the sensors clean and free from ice, so that they always operate reliably. Do not direct high-pressure cleaners at the sensors for sustained periods and maintain a distance of at least 30 cm, approx. 1 ft.

Manual operation

The LED above the button flashes in addition.

PDC with optical warning

The fact that the vehicle is approaching an object is shown on the control display. Objects that are further away from the car will appear on the control display before an audible warning signal is given. The display is shown on the control display as soon as PDC is switched on.

System limitations



PDC is no substitute for your personal assessment of obstructions. The sensors have certain dead areas in which objects cannot be detected. In addition, the identification of objects may not be possible if the physical limits of the ultrasonic measuring principle are exceeded, for instance with trailer noses and hitches, and thin or wedge-shaped objects. Low objects already indicated, such as kerbs, may enter the sensors' dead areas before or after a continuous audible signal is given. Higher, protruding objects such as ledges may not be detectable. Loud sound sources outside or inside the vehicle can drown out the PDC signal. For this reason, drive prudently, as other-

wise there is a risk of personal injury or damage to property. ◀

Driving stability control systems

Your BMW has a number of systems that help to maintain the vehicle's stability even in adverse driving conditions.

Anti-lock Brake System ABS

ABS prevents the wheels locking when the brakes are applied. The vehicle can consequently still be steered even when the brakes are applied hard. This increases active driving safety.

ABS is ready to operate each time the engine is started. Safe braking, see page 124.

Electronic Brake Force Distribution EBV

The system regulates the braking pressure on the rear wheels in order to stabilise the braking behaviour.

Dynamic Brake Control DBC


If the brake is pressed down rapidly, this system automatically boosts the braking force to a maximum and thus helps to keep the braking distance as short as possible when a full brake application is made. It also makes full use of the advantages offered by ABS.

Maintain pressure on the brake as long as full braking is required.

Dynamic Stability Control DSC

DSC prevents the driving wheels losing traction when you pull away from rest or accelerate. The system also recognises unstable driving conditions, for example if the rear of the car is about to swerve or if momentum is acting at an angle past the front wheels. In such instances, DSC helps to keep the car on a stable course, subject to the limits imposed by the basic laws of

dynamics, by reducing the engine output and applying the brakes to individual wheels.

 Not even DSC can overcome the laws of physics. It is therefore the driver's responsibility to adopt a suitable driving style in every situation. Do not undermine the additional safety afforded by this system by taking driving risks as otherwise there is a danger that accidents might occur. ◀

Deactivating DSC



Press and hold down the button for at least 3 seconds until the indicator lamp for DSC OFF lights up and DSC OFF is displayed in the instrument cluster. Both Dynamic Traction Control DTC and DSC are deactivated. The stabilising and traction-improving effects are no longer available.

In the same way as with a differential interlock, brake intervention takes place on the rear axle if the drive wheels spin severely, improving forward momentum even if the DSC is disabled.

Reactivate DSC as soon as possible in order to support driving stability.

Activating DSC

Press the button again; the indicator lamp in the instrument cluster goes out.

As a check



If the indicator lamp is flashing: DSC is regulating the propulsive and braking forces.

If the indicator lamp is on: DSC and DTC have failed.



The indicator lamp lights up and DSC OFF is displayed in the instrument cluster: DSC is deactivated.

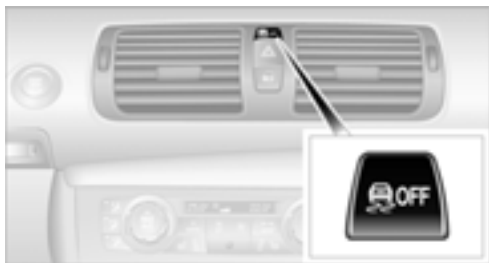
Dynamic Traction Control DTC

DTC is a version of DSC that has been traction-optimised for particular operating conditions, e.g. driving on roads where the snow has not been cleared. The system assures maximum traction, but with reduced dynamic stability. You should therefore drive with caution.

In the following exceptional situations it may be best to activate DTC for a short time:

- ▷ When driving uphill on snow-covered roads, in slush or on unploughed, snow-covered roads
- ▷ If the car has to be rocked out of or started in deep snow or on a loose surface
- ▷ If snow chains are fitted

Activating DTC



Press the button; the indicator lamp for DSC OFF lights up and TRACTION is displayed in the instrument cluster.

As a check



If the indicator lamp is flashing: DTC is regulating the propulsive and braking forces.

If the indicator lamp is on: DSC and DTC have failed.



The indicator lamp lights up and TRACTION is displayed in the instrument cluster: DTC is activated.


Deactivating DTC

Press the button again; the indicator lamp in the instrument cluster goes out.

Drive-off assistant 125i, 135i

The drive-off assistant enables you to drive off smoothly on uphill gradients. It is not necessary to use the handbrake for this.

1. Hold the vehicle in place by depressing the brake.
2. Release the brake and drive off without delay.

 The drive-off assistant holds the vehicle in place for approx. 2 seconds after the brake is released. After releasing the brake, drive off without delay. After approx. 2 seconds, the drive-off assistant will no longer hold the vehicle in place and the car will start to roll backwards. ◀

Run Flat Indicator RPA

Principle

The system does not measure the tyre pressures as such.

The system detects a pressure loss on the basis of a comparison between the speeds at which the individual wheels rotate while the vehicle is in motion.


In the event of a pressure drop, the diameter and therefore the rotational speed of the wheel in question change. This is detected and reported as a flat tyre.

Operating requirements

The system requires initialisation with the correct tyre pressure to ensure reliable reporting of flat tyres.

The system has to be reinitialised every time tyre pressures are corrected, every time a wheel or a tyre is changed and whenever a trailer has been attached or detached.

System limitations

 No warning can be given of extreme, sudden tyre failure caused by external factors. ◀

Natural and evenly distributed tyre pressure loss in all four tyres will not be detected. Consequently, check the tyre pressures at regular intervals.

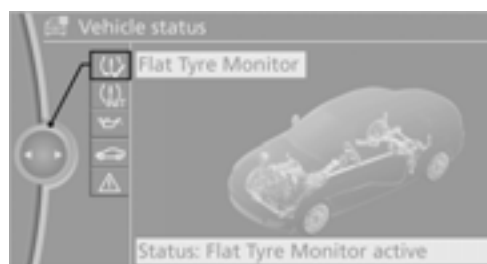
In the following situations, the system could be slow to respond or operate incorrectly:

- ▷ System was not initialised
- ▷ Driving on snow-covered or slippery surfaces
- ▷ Sporty style of driving: high slip at the drive wheels, high lateral acceleration
- ▷ Snow chains are fitted

Status display

The current status of the Run Flat Indicator can be shown on the control display, e.g. whether the Run Flat Indicator is active.

1. "Vehicle information"
2. "Vehicle status"
3. "Flat Tyre Monitor"



The status is displayed.

Initialisation


When the system is initialised, the set inflation pressures are applied as the reference value for detecting a flat tyre. Initialisation is started by confirming the correct inflation pressures.

Do not initialise the system while snow chains are fitted.

1. "Vehicle information"
2. "Vehicle status"
3. "Confirm tyre pressure"



4. Start the engine – do not drive off.
5. Start the initialisation with "Confirm tyre pressure".
6. Drive off.

 Initialising is completed by driving the vehicle; this process can be interrupted at any time. Initialisation resumes automatically as soon as the car starts moving again. ◀

Indication of a flat tyre



The warning lamp shows red. A message appears on the control display. An acoustic signal also sounds.

There is a flat tyre or substantial loss of tyre pressure.

1. Reduce your speed and cautiously stop the car. Avoid violent or sudden braking and steering manoeuvres.
2. Check whether your vehicle is equipped with normal tyres or with run-flat tyres.

The symbol identifying run-flat tyres, see page 231, is a circle with the letters RSC on the sidewall.



If the car is not fitted with run-flat tyres do not continue driving. Any attempt to drive on can result in a serious accident. ◀

If applicable, Dynamic Stability Control DSC is switched on when a flat tyre is reported.

What to do in the event of a flat tyre

Normal tyres

1. Identify the damaged tyres.

To do this, check the inflation pressure in all four tyres.

You can do this using the inflation pressure display in the mobility system, page 233.

If all four tyres are inflated to the correct pressures, the Run Flat Indicator might not have been initialised. Initialise the system.

If you cannot tell which tyre is damaged, please contact your BMW Service.

2. Use the mobility system to repair the flat tyre, see page 253.

Run-flat tyres

If a tyre has punctured you can continue your journey, driving at speeds up to a maximum of 80 km/h, approx. 50 mph.

If you continue a journey with a flat tyre:

1. Avoid violent or sudden braking and steering manoeuvres.
2. Do not exceed a speed of 80 km/h, approx. 50 mph.
3. Check the pressure in all four tyres at the next opportunity.

If all four tyres are inflated to the correct pressures, the Run Flat Indicator might not have been initialised. Initialise the system.

Maximum possible distance with tyres completely deflated:


The maximum possible distance with a puncture is determined by the load and stress to which the vehicle is exposed during travel.

In the case of average load, the possible distance is approx. 80 km, approx. 50 miles.


The vehicle's handling characteristics change when driving with damaged tyres. Examples include the vehicle swerving more when braking, braking distances increasing and modified self-steering response. Modify your driving style accordingly. Avoid sudden steering move-


ments or driving over obstacles such as kerbs, holes in the road, etc.

As the stress to which the vehicle is exposed is an essential factor in the possible distance that can be travelled with deflated tyres, this distance can be reduced dependent upon speed, road conditions, outside temperature, stress, etc. Conversely, it can be increased by adopting a more conservative driving style.

 Drive with caution and do not exceed a speed of 80 km/h, approx. 50 mph.

In the event of a loss of tyre inflation pressure driving characteristics change, e.g. reduced track stability during braking, longer braking distance and different self-steering properties. ◀

 When a trailer is being towed, heavy trailers in particular can start to snake. Therefore do not exceed a speed of 60 km/h, approx. 35 mph, otherwise there is a risk of accident. ◀

 Vibration or loud noises while driving may be an indication that the tyre has finally failed. Reduce your speed and stop; otherwise, parts of the tyre could come loose, possibly resulting in an accident. Do not drive the car any further; contact BMW Service instead. ◀

Active steering on 6-cylinder engines

Principle

Active steering varies the turning angle of the front wheels in relation to steering wheel movements. It also varies the steering force required to turn the wheels, depending on the speed at which you are driving.

At lower speeds, e.g. in the city or while parking, the turning angle is increased, i.e. smaller steering wheel movements and less effort are required to turn the wheels. At higher speeds, in contrast, the turning angle is increasingly reduced. Your BMW's handling is thus improved across all speed ranges.

In critical situations, the system can correct the wheel turning angle resulting from the driver's steering and thus stabilise the vehicle before the driver takes any action. This stabilising intervention function is deactivated when DSC is switched off, see page 91.

Malfunction



The warning lamps come on. Active steering is malfunctioning or temporarily deactivated. At low speeds greater steering wheel movements are necessary, at high speeds the car reacts more sensitively to steering wheel movements. The stabilising intervention may also be deactivated. Drive cautiously and think well ahead.

Deactivation

Active steering disables itself to run an initialisation. This deactivation is indicated by a message on the control display. The initialisation can take a number of minutes.

If the message does not disappear during your current journey, have the system checked.

Defect

In the event of a defect, a corresponding text message is displayed. Have the system checked.

Servotronic

Principle

The Servotronic varies the force required to turn the steering wheel according to the speed at which you are driving.

At low speeds, steering power is boosted strongly, i.e. less effort is required for steering. Power assistance for the steering diminishes as road speed increases.

The system works automatically.

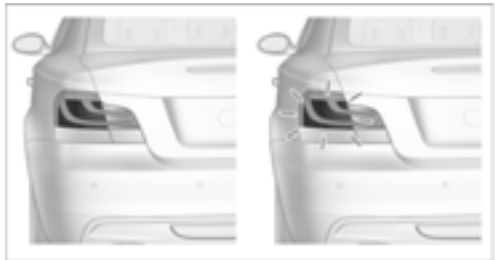
Malfunctions



The warning lamp lights up. A message appears on the control display.

Servotronic is faulty or has failed. The steering characteristics have altered. You can continue your journey, but moderate your speed and exercise due caution. Have the system checked as soon as possible.

Dynamic brake lights



On the left: normal braking.

On the right: hard braking.

When you brake strongly, the brake lights of your BMW flash. If the vehicle has been braked in this way, the hazard warning flashers are activated and the brake lights remain lit without flashing.

The hazard warning flashers are only deactivated when you accelerate again, or can be cancelled manually.

Airbags



There are the following airbags beneath the covers indicated:

- 1 Front airbags
- 2 Coupé: head-level airbags
- 3 Side airbags in the seat backrests

Protective effect




Failure to comply with the notes on page 47 may put your personal safety at risk. ◀

The front airbags protect the driver and front passenger in the event of a head-on collision, if the protective action of the seat belts alone would be insufficient. The head-level and side airbags provide protection in the event of a side-on collision. The side airbag has the effect of supporting the upper body from the side. The head-level airbag supports the head of the seat's occupant.

The airbags have been designed to not be triggered off in every collision situation, e.g. not in

minor collisions or if the car is struck from the rear.

 Never attach any material to the airbag covers with adhesive, place material over them or modify them in any other way. Keep the dashboard and windscreen in the area of the passenger's side free, i.e. do not attach adhesive foil or covers and do not fit brackets for e.g. navigation devices or mobile phones. Do not fit any protective covers, seat cushions or other objects to the front seats unless they have specifically been approved for use on seats with integral side airbags. Do not hang items of clothing such as coats or jackets over the backrests. Do not dismantle the airbag occupant restraint system. Do not modify the individual components of the system or its wiring in any way. This includes the upholstered covers on the steering wheel, instrument panel, seats and roof posts as well as the sides of the roof lining. Do not remove the steering wheel. Avoid touching the system's components immediately after it has been triggered off, as there is a risk of sustaining burns. If the airbag occupant restraint system malfunctions, is to be decommissioned or has been triggered, have it checked, repaired or dismantled and the airbag generators scrapped only by your Service Centre or a workshop that has the required permits for handling explosives. Otherwise, work performed incorrectly can lead to failure or inadvertent triggering of the system and to injuries. ◀


Operational status of airbag system



When radio readiness, see page 63, or the ignition is switched on, the warning lamp lights up for a short time to indicate that the entire airbag system and the belt tensioners are operational.

Airbag system faulty


- ▷ Warning lamp does not light up from radio readiness.
- ▷ Warning lamp remains permanently on.

 In the event of a fault in the airbag system, have it checked without delay, as there is otherwise the risk that the system will not function as intended even if a sufficiently severe accident occurs. ◀

Pedestrian protection system, active

Principle

With the active pedestrian protection system, the engine compartment is raised in the event of a collision between the front of the vehicle and a pedestrian. Sensors located under the bumper identify this situation. This provides additional crumple space under the active engine compartment for the subsequent frontal impact.

 Do not touch the hinge actuators, as this may cause injury by inadvertently triggering the system. ◀


System limitations

The active engine compartment is only triggered between speeds of approx. 20 km/h and 55 km/h (approx. 12.5 mph and 34 mph).

For safety reasons, the system may also be triggered in rare cases when the possibility of a collision with a pedestrian cannot be clearly excluded, e.g. in the event of:

- ▷ An impact with a barrel or boundary post
- ▷ A collision with an animal
- ▷ An impact involving a stone
- ▷ Driving into a snowdrift

Activated pedestrian protection system

 Once the active engine compartment has been triggered or if the system is damaged, you must have the system checked and replaced.


Have this work done by a Service Centre only, otherwise there is no guarantee that this safety equipment will function correctly. ◀

Malfunction




The warning lamp lights up. A message appears on the control display.


The system has been triggered or has malfunctioned. Drive immediately and carefully to the closest Service Centre to have the system checked and repaired.

 Once the warning lamp has been activated, do not open the engine compartment as this may cause injury or damage. ◀

Notes

 Do not dismantle or modify the system in any way whatsoever.


Do not modify the individual components of the system or its wiring in any way. ◀

 The system should be checked, repaired, dismantled and scrapped by your Service Centre only. Any careless or unskilled interference with the system could otherwise lead to its failure or to accidental triggering with the risk of injury. ◀

Convertible: rollover protection system

Should a serious enough accident occur or if the longitudinal axis undergoes extreme tilt, the rollover protection system is activated automatically. The protective hoops located behind the rear head restraints are extended within a fraction of a second.

In combination with the reinforced windscreen frame, the rollover protection system increases safety for occupants.

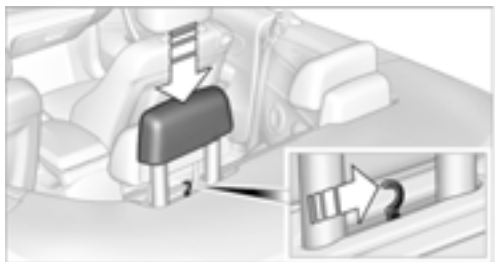
 Never block the movement range of the rollover protection system.

In less serious accidents, the seat belts and, depending on the severity of the accident, the belt tensioner and multi-level airbag occupant restraint system, will afford protection. ◀

Lowering

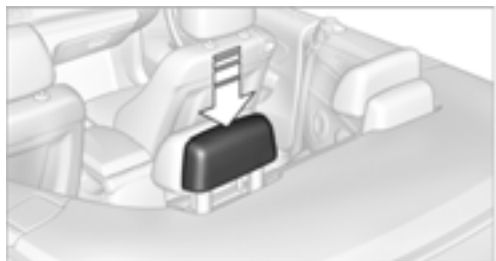
If the rollover protection system has not been subjected to loads after being triggered automatically, it can be retracted again. No tools are required for this.

1. Push the release device sideways and hold it in this position.



2. Press the protective hoop halfway down from above.
3. Let go of the release device.

4. Press down the protective hoop until it engages.



5. Proceed likewise with the second protective hoop.

If the rollover protection system has been triggered unexpectedly, have it checked.



Do not move the convertible top if the rollover protection system is extended.

Do not modify any individual components or the wiring of the rollover protection system.

Have work on the rollover protection system carried out by your Service Centre only.

Incorrectly performed repair work may result in a malfunction or a failure.

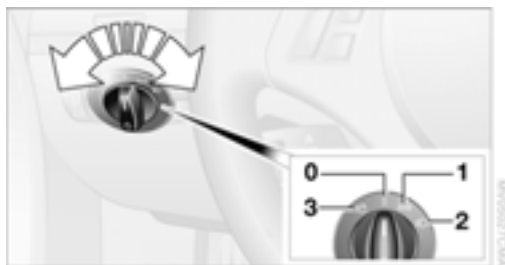
To have the system checked and keep it operational in the long term, always observe the maintenance intervals, see page 82. ◀

Lights

Vehicle equipment

This chapter describes all standard equipment, national market versions and optional equipment featured in the series. As such, it includes descriptions of equipment that might not be available in a vehicle on account of the optional equipment selected, for example, or the national-market version. This also applies for safety-relevant functions and systems.

Overview



- 0** Lights off, daytime driving lights if car is equipped with xenon lights
- 1** Side lights
- 2** Low-beam headlights, welcome lights
- 3** Automatic driving lights control, daytime driving lights, welcome lights, high beam assistance, Adaptive Headlights

Side lights/low-beam headlights, automatic driving lights control


General guidance

If the driver's door is opened with the ignition switched off, the exterior lighting is switched off automatically if the light switch is in position **0**, **2** or **3**.

Side lights

When the switch is in position **1** the lights are on all round the car. You can use the side lights for parking.

With halogen headlights: with the ignition switched off and the switch in position **1**, only the outer chambers of the tail lights are lit up, see page [252](#).

 The side lights will discharge the battery. Do not leave them switched on for too long, otherwise the engine may fail to start. It is preferable to switch on the right or left parking lights, see page [103](#). ◀


Low-beam headlights


The low-beam headlights come on when the light switch is in position **2** and the ignition is switched on.

Automatic driving lights control

When the switch is in position **3**, the low-beam headlights are switched on and off automatically depending on ambient light conditions, e.g. in a tunnel, twilight, and in precipitation. Adaptive Headlights are active. When the low-beam headlights are on, the LED next to the symbol is lit. You can also activate the daytime driving lights, see page [101](#). In the above-mentioned situations, the system then switches automatically from daytime driving lights to low-beam headlights.

The headlights may also switch on when the sun is sitting low on a blue sky.

 The low-beam headlights remain switched on irrespective of the ambient light conditions if you switch on the fog lights. ◀

 The driving lights control function is no substitute for your individual judgement of when it is necessary to switch on the lights. The sensors are unable, for instance, to recognise fog or hazy weather. To avoid any safety

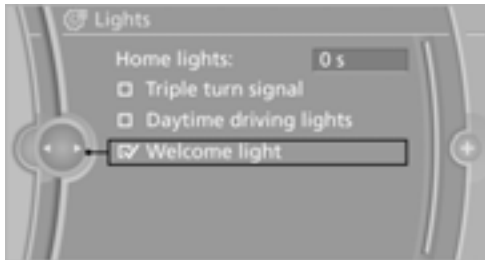
risk in such situations, switch on the low-beam headlights manually. ◀

Welcome lights

If you leave the light switch in position **2** or **3** when parking and switching off the vehicle, the side lights and interior lights light up briefly when the vehicle is unlocked.

Activating/deactivating the welcome lights

1. "Settings"
2. "Lights"
3. "Welcome light"



The setting is memorised for the remote control currently in use.

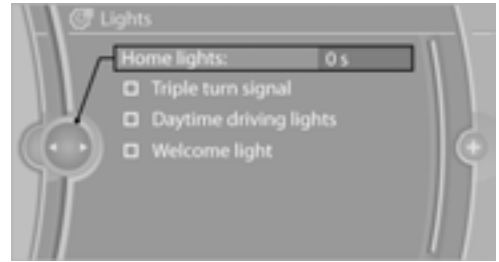
Headlight courtesy delay feature

If you activate the headlight flasher after the ignition has been switched off and with the lights switched off, the low-beam headlights will remain on for a certain time.

Setting the duration

1. "Settings"
2. "Lights"
3. "Home lights:"

4. Set the duration.



The setting is memorised for the remote control currently in use.

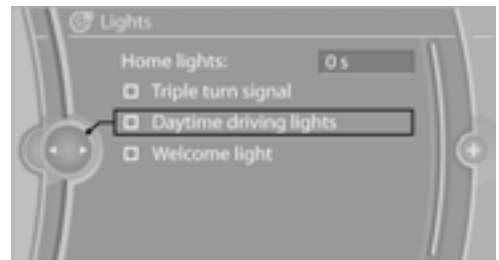
Daytime driving lights

The daytime driving lights light up in switch position **3**; with xenon lights, they also light up in switch position **0**. With xenon lights, the light output is lower than with low-beam headlights.

The rear lights might also light up.

Activating/deactivating daytime driving lights

1. "Settings"
2. "Lights"
3. "Daytime driving lights"



The setting is memorised for the remote control currently in use.

Adaptive Headlights

The principle

Adaptive Headlight technology is a variable headlight control system that makes it possible to illuminate the road surface more effectively. The light cones from the headlights are directed to suit the road ahead on the basis of steering angle and other parameters.

During sharp turns at speeds up to approx. 70 km/h, approx. 40 mph, e.g. in hairpin bends or when cornering, a cornering light is added that illuminates the inside area of the bend.

Activating Adaptive Headlights

With the ignition switched on, turn the light switch to position **3**, see page [100](#).

The cornering light is added automatically depending on the steering angle or turn signal indicators.

Stationary function: to avoid dazzling drivers of oncoming vehicles, Adaptive Head Light points away from the driver's side when the vehicle is stationary.

When you are driving in reverse, only the cornering light is active, lighting up the outside area of the bend.

Malfunction



The warning lamp lights up. A message appears on the control display.

The Adaptive Headlights are faulty or have failed. Have the system checked as soon as possible.

Headlight beam throw adjustment

Halogen lights



Adapt the beam throw of the low-beam headlights manually to suit the load carried in the car, otherwise the drivers of oncoming vehicles could be dazzled:

The second value in each case applies when towing a trailer.

0 / 1 = 1 to 2 persons without luggage

1 / 1 = 4 persons without luggage

1 / 2 = 4 persons with luggage

2 / 2 = 1 person, luggage compartment full

Comply with rear axle load limit, see page [267](#).

Xenon headlights

Beam throw is regulated automatically, e.g. when you accelerate or brake, as well as for different loads.

High-beam headlights/ parking lights




- 1 High-beam headlights
- 2 Headlight flasher
- 3 Parking lights

Right or left parking lights

There is an additional option of switching on the lights on the side of the car facing the road when parked.

Switching on

After parking the car, push the lever up or down beyond the pressure point for approx. 1 second, arrow **3**.

 The parking lights will drain the battery. Do not leave them switched on for too long, otherwise the engine may fail to start. ◀

Switching off

Press the lever in the opposite direction as far as the pressure point, arrow **3**.

High beam assistance

The principle

This system automatically switches the high-beam headlights on and back off. A sensor on the front of the inside mirror controls this feature. The assistant ensures that the high-beam headlights are switched on whenever the traffic situation permits this. This relieves you of one distraction from driving while optimising your

view of the road. Naturally, you can also control the lights yourself at any time and switch them on and off as usual.

Activating the system

1. Turn the light switch to position **3**, see page 100.
2. While the low-beam headlights are switched on, briefly press the turn indicator lever in the direction for high-beam headlights.




The indicator lamp in the instrument cluster comes on when high beam assistance is activated. The headlights are automatically switched between high beams and low beams as the system reacts to oncoming traffic and vehicles driving in front of you, as well as to ambient light conditions in towns, for example.

Manual high beams and low beams

If you wish or if the situation calls for it, you can control the lights yourself at any time:

- ▷ If high beam assistance has switched on the high-beam headlights but you wish to use the low-beam headlights, simply use the turn indicator lever to switch off the high-beam headlights. This will deactivate high beam assistance. To reactivate the system, briefly press the turn indicator lever back in the direction for high-beam headlights.
- ▷ If high beam assistance has switched on the low-beam headlights but you wish to use the high-beam headlights, switch on the high-beam headlights as usual. This will deactivate the system; thus you will have to switch to low-beam headlights manually. To reactivate the system, briefly press the turn indicator lever back in the direction for high-beam headlights.
- ▷ The headlight flasher can be operated as usual with low-beam headlights.

System limitations

 High beam assistance cannot substitute for your personal judgement of when to use the high-beam headlights. To avoid any safety risk, switch to the low-beam headlights manually in situations that require this. ◀

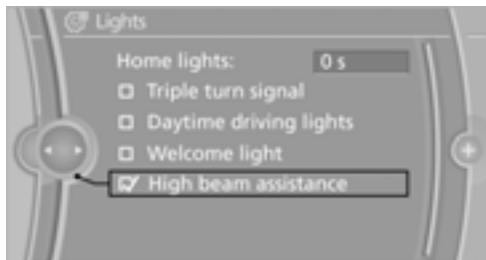
The following situations are examples of when the system may not work at all or only to a limited extent, making it necessary for you to take action yourself:

- ▶ During extremely unfavourable weather conditions such as fog or heavy precipitation
- ▶ When trying to detect poorly-illuminated road users such as pedestrians, bicyclists, equestrians or carts, when trains or ships are close to the road, or when game are passing across the road
- ▶ In sharp bends, on steep crests or hollows, at intersections or when there is half-obscured oncoming traffic on motorways
- ▶ In poorly illuminated towns or wherever there are highly reflective signs
- ▶ In low-speed areas
- ▶ When the windscreen in front of the inside mirror is covered with condensation, dirt, stickers, labels, etc.
- ▶ When the sensor is dirty. Clean the sensor on the front of the inside mirror using a cloth moistened with a small amount of a glass cleaning product

Activation via iDrive

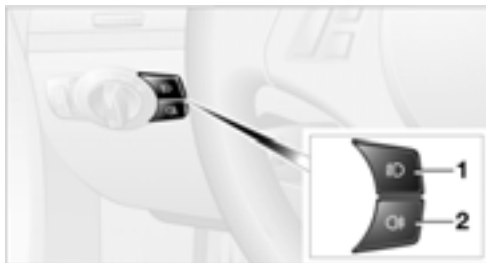
1. "Settings"
2. "Lights"

3. "High beam assistance"



The setting is memorised for the remote control currently in use.

Fog lights




- 1 Front fog light
- 2 Rear fog lights

To switch on or off, press the respective button.

Front fog light

The side lights or low-beam headlights must be switched on. The green indicator lamp in the instrument cluster comes on when the fog lights are in use.

 If automatic driving lights control has been activated, the low-beam headlights come on automatically when the front fog lights are switched on. ◀

Rear fog lights

The low-beam headlights or side lights with fog lights must be switched on. The yellow indicator lamp in the instrument cluster comes on when the rear fog lights are in use.

Rule of the road

When entering countries where the traffic drives on the opposite side of the road to the country in which your vehicle is registered, certain measures are necessary to avoid dazzling the drivers of oncoming vehicles.

Service is able to supply masking film. Apply it according to the instructions enclosed with the film.

When the headlights are masked, the low-beam headlights can be switched on by turning the light switch to position **2**, see page 100. This also applies to automatic driving lights control.

Instrument lighting

You can adjust the brightness of the instrument lighting only when the side lights or the low-beam headlights are switched on.



1. Press button **1** in the turn indicator lever up or down repeatedly until the appropriate symbol appears in the display, accompanied by the light intensity and the word "SET".
2. Press button **2**.




3. Press button **1** up or down to select the desired brightness.
4. Press button **2**.
The display again shows the outside temperature and the time.

Interior lights

The interior lights, the footwell lights, the door entry lighting, the luggage compartment light and the ground lights are controlled automatically.

The LEDs for the ground lights are set in the door handles and illuminate the ground in front of the doors.

 To preserve the battery, all lights inside the car are switched off a few minutes after radio readiness is switched off, see Start/stop button on page 62. ◀

Switching interior lights on/off manually



Interior lights, front and rear:
To switch on and off, press the button.

If the interior lights, footwell lights, door entry lighting and ground lights are to remain off permanently, press the button of the front interior light for approx. 3 seconds.

Reading lights



There are reading lights at the front and rear, next to the interior lights. To switch on and off, press the button.

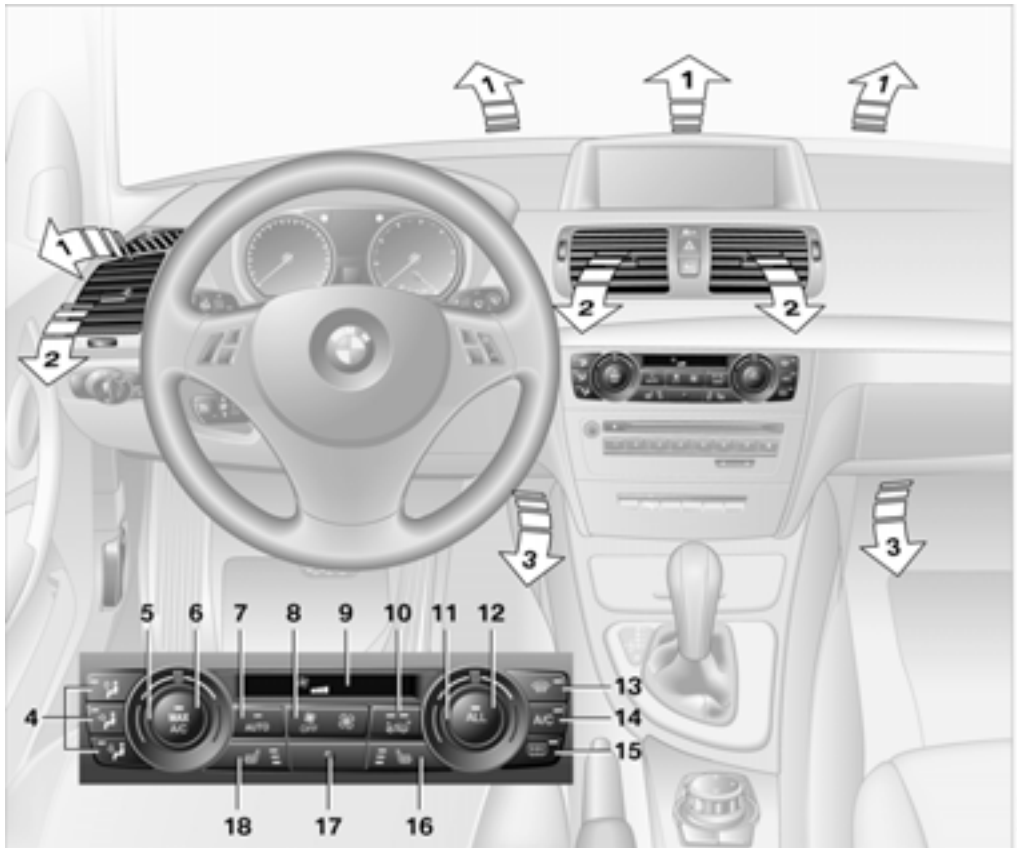
Climate control

Vehicle equipment

This chapter describes all standard equipment, national market versions and optional equipment featured in the series. As such, it includes

descriptions of equipment that might not be available in a vehicle on account of the optional equipment selected, for example, or the national-market version. This also applies for safety-relevant functions and systems.

Overview



- | | | | |
|---|---|---|-------------------------|
| 1 | Air to windscreen and side windows | 4 | Manual air distribution |
| 2 | Air to the upper body area:
Draught-free ventilation 110 | 5 | Temperature, left |
| 3 | Air to footwell | 6 | Maximum cooling effect |
| | | 7 | AUTO programme |

- 8 Manual air flow, AUTO intensity
- 9 Display
- 10 Automatic Air Recirculation Control AUC/
recirculated-air mode
- 11 Temperature, right
- 12 ALL programme
- 13 Defrosting and demisting windows
- 14 Switching cooling function on/off manually
- 15 Rear window heating
- 16 Seat heating, right 52
- 17 Interior temperature sensor, please keep
clear
- 18 Seat heating, left 52

Automatic air-conditioning system

Preferred interior climate

The AUTO programme 7 offers optimum air distribution and air flow for virtually all conditions, see AUTO programme below. All you need to do is select an inside temperature you find comfortable.

The following sections inform you in detail about how to adjust the settings.

Most settings are saved for the remote control currently in use, see also Personal Profile settings on page 31.

Adjusting air distribution manually



The air distribution can be switched on and off manually. The air is directed towards the windscreen, the upper body area, and the footwell.

The air distribution system can be switched

back on with the AUTO button. The cooling function is switched on automatically in this case and the manually adjusted air distribution deactivated.

Temperature



Turn to set the desired temperature.

The automatic air-conditioning system sets this temperature as quickly as possible regardless of the season, using maximum cooling or heating power if necessary. The temperature is then maintained.

Avoid switching between different temperature settings in rapid succession. The automatic air-conditioning system will otherwise not have sufficient time to set the selected temperature.

Regardless of the outside temperature, the highest setting can be used to provide maximum heat output.

The lowest heat setting provides continuous cooling, regardless of the outside temperature.

Maximum cooling



Press the button.

System switches to the lowest temperature, maximum air flow and recirculated-air mode.

The air flows from the outlets for the upper body area. These should therefore be left open.

Air is cooled at the fastest rate:

- ▷ Above an outside temperature of approx. 0 °C/32 °F
- ▷ With the engine running

AUTO programme



Press the button.

The air flow, air distribution and temperature are automatically regulated.

Depending on the selected temperature, AUTO intensity and external influences, the air is directed towards the windscreen, side windows, upper body, and into the footwell.

The cooling function is activated automatically when the AUTO button is pressed.

A condensation sensor simultaneously regulates the programme so that condensation on

the window surface is prevented as far as possible.

The programme is switched off if the air distribution is adjusted manually or the button pressed again.

Intensity of the AUTO programme

With the AUTO programme switched on, the automatic control of air flow and air distribution can be changed:



Press the left side of the button to reduce the intensity. Press the right side of the button to increase it.

The selected intensity is shown on the display for the automatic air-conditioning system.

Convertible programme

With the convertible top opened and the AUTO programme switched on, the Convertible programme is active. In the Convertible programme, the automatic air-conditioning system is optimised for driving with the convertible top open. In addition, the air flow increases as the speed increases.



The effectiveness of the Convertible programme can be boosted appreciably by fitting the wind deflector. ◀

Adjusting air flow manually

To be able to regulate the air flow manually, first switch off the AUTO programme.



Press the left side of the button to reduce air flow. Press the right side of the button to increase it.

The air volume may be reduced or the system may even shut down entirely, to preserve the battery. The display remains unchanged.

Automatic Air Recirculation Control AUC/recirculated-air mode

If the air outside the car has an unpleasant odour or contains pollutants, the outside air supply can be shut off. The air inside the car is then recirculated.



Press the button repeatedly to call up an operating mode:

- ▷ LED off: outside air is constantly entering the car.
- ▷ Left-hand LED on, AUC mode: a sensor detects pollutants in the outside air and shuts it off automatically.
- ▷ Right-hand LED on, recirculated-air mode: the ambient air supply is permanently shut off. If there is condensation on the window surface, switch off recirculated-air mode and increase the air flow if applicable. Ensure that air can flow towards the wind-screen.



The recirculated-air mode should not be used continuously for lengthy periods, as the quality of the air inside the car will otherwise gradually deteriorate. ◀

Via a button on the steering wheel

You can switch quickly between recirculated-air mode and the previous mode using a button on the steering wheel, see page 11.

ALL programme



Press the button.

The current temperature setting for the driver's side is transferred to the passenger's side.

If the temperature setting for the driver's side is changed, the temperature on the passenger's side is also set at the same time.

The programme is switched off if the setting on the passenger's side is changed or the button pressed again.

Defrosting windows



Press the button.

Quickly removes ice and condensation from the windscreen and the front side windows.

To do so, switch on the cooling function as well.

Switching cooling function on/off

The interior can only be cooled when the engine is running.



Press the button.

The air is cooled and dried, and then reheated in accordance with the temperature setting.

Depending on weather conditions, the wind-screen may fog over momentarily when the engine is started.

The cooling function is activated automatically when the AUTO button is pressed.

Rear window heating



Press the button.

The rear window heating is switched off automatically after a certain time. Depending on the equipment specification, the top wires serve as the antenna and are not part of the rear window heating.

Switching the system on/off

Switching off



Keep the left side of the button depressed or press the left side of the button to lowest setting.

All indicator lamps, except that for the rear window heating if it is on, go out.

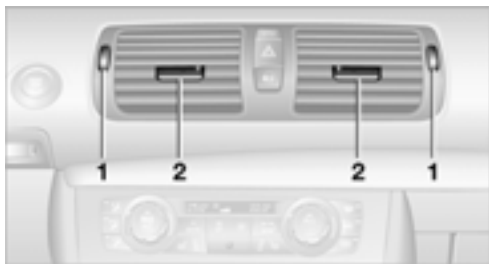


Switching off the automatic air-conditioning system shuts off the outside air supply. If the air quality deteriorates or the wind-screen mist up, switch on the system again and turn up the air flow rate. ◀

Switching on

Press any button, except the ALL programme or rear window heating button.

Ventilation



- 1 Knurled wheels for opening and closing the air vents to infinitely adjust the air flow.
- 2 Levers for setting the airflow direction

Ventilation for cooling

Set the air vents so that the cool air is directed towards you, e.g. if the car has been heated up.

Draught-free ventilation

Adjust the outlets so that the airflow passes the occupants without striking their bodies directly.

Micro-filter/activated charcoal filter

The micro-filter traps dust and pollen in the incoming air. The activated charcoal filter in addition removes gaseous pollutants from the air entering the vehicle. This combined filter is changed by Service during routine maintenance work.

Independent ventilation system

Principle

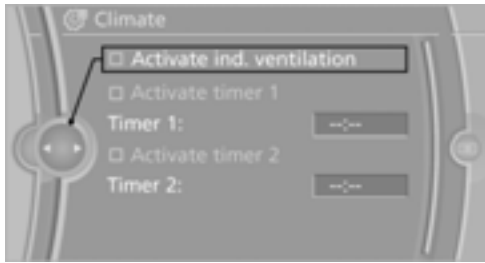
The independent ventilation system ventilates the passenger compartment and lowers its temperature if applicable.


The system can be switched on and off directly or using a pre-selected switch-on time for any outside temperature. It remains switched on for 30 minutes.

Due to the high power consumption, you should not switch on the independent ventilation system twice in a row without first letting the battery recharge while the vehicle is being driven. Open the air vents to enable air flow. Operation is possible via iDrive.

Switching on and off directly

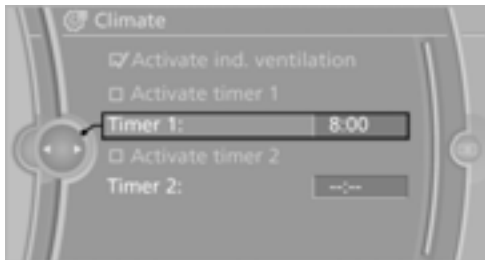
1. "Settings"
2. "Climate"
3. "Activate ind. ventilation"






 The symbol on the display of the automatic air-conditioning system flashes.

Preselecting switch-on times

1. "Settings"
2. "Climate"
3. "Activate timer 1" or "Activate timer 2"
4. "Timer 1:" or "Timer 2:"



5. Turn the controller: the hour setting is changed.
6. Press the controller: the setting is adopted.

7. Turn the controller: the minute setting is changed.
8. Press the controller: the setting is adopted.
 -  The symbol on the display of the automatic air-conditioning system lights up.
 -  The symbol on the display of the automatic air-conditioning system flashes when the system has switched on.
 -  The relevant system is switched on within the next 24 hours only. Afterwards, it must be reactivated. ◀

Practical interior equipment

Vehicle equipment

This chapter describes all standard equipment, national market versions and optional equipment featured in the series. As such, it includes descriptions of equipment that might not be available in a vehicle on account of the optional equipment selected, for example, or the national-market version. This also applies for safety-relevant functions and systems.


Glove compartment

Opening



Pull the handle.

The light in the glove box comes on.

 After using the glove box while the car is moving, close its lid without delay, so that it cannot cause injury in the event of an accident. ◀

Closing

Swing lid up.

Locking

To lock the glove box, use the integrated key of the remote control, see page 30.

USB interface for data transfer



Connection for importing and exporting data on a USB medium, e.g. music collections, see page 175.

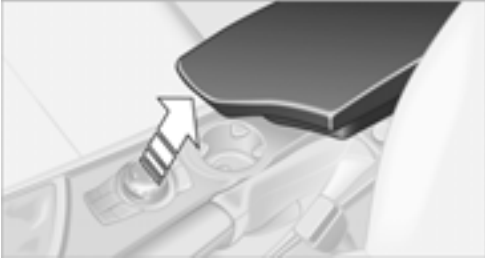
When connecting, bear the following in mind:

- ▷ Do not force the connector into the USB interface.
- ▷ Do not connect any devices such as fans or lamps to the USB interface.
- ▷ Do not connect USB hard disks.
- ▷ Do not use the USB audio interface for charging external devices.

Centre armrest

Storage compartment

Depending on the version, the centre armrest between the front seats contains a cheque card holder and either a compartment or a snap-in adapter.



Opening

Press the button, see arrow.

Connection for external audio equipment


You can connect an external audio device such as a CD or MP3 player and play audio tracks over the car's loudspeaker system:


- ▷ AUX-IN port, see page 180.
- ▷ USB audio interface/extended connectivity of the music player in the mobile phone, see page 181.

Storage compartments in the passenger compartment

There are compartments located next to the steering column, in the doors, in the centre console and in the rear between the seats.


There are nets on the front-seat backrests.

 Do not store objects unsecured in the passenger compartment, as they could endanger the car's occupants, e.g. in case of heavy braking or sudden swerving. ◀

 Do not place anti-slip supports, e.g. anti-slip mats, on the instrument panel, otherwise the materials of these supports may damage the instrument panel. ◀


Coupé: coat hooks

Coat hooks are located in the rear.

 Items of clothing hung from the hooks must not obstruct the driver's view. Do

not hang heavy objects from the hooks, as they could endanger the vehicle's occupants, e.g. in case of heavy braking or sudden swerving. ◀

Drinks holders

 Use lightweight and break-proof containers and do not transport hot beverages. Otherwise there is an increased risk of injury in the event of an accident. Do not force containers that are too large into the drinks holders; otherwise damage could result. ◀



There is a drinks holder in the centre console.



You can attach a clip-mount drinks holder to the side of the centre console.

Ashtray

Opening



Push the projection on the cover.

Emptying




Lift out the insert.

Lighter



With the engine running or the ignition switched on, press in the cigarette lighter.

The cigarette lighter can be removed when it pops back out.

 Hold the hot cigarette lighter only by its knob, otherwise you may suffer burns. When leaving the car, always switch off the igni-


tion and remove the remote control so that children cannot operate the cigarette lighter and burn themselves. ◀


Connecting electrical appliances

When the engine is running or the ignition is switched on, you can use electrical equipment such as inspection lamps, car vacuum cleaners and similar in your BMW if at least one of the following connection options is available.

The total load of all charging sockets must not exceed 140 W at 12 V.

Do not damage the sockets by attempting to insert plugs of the wrong pattern.

 Do not connect battery chargers to the sockets installed in the vehicle prior to delivery, otherwise this may damage the vehicle. ◀

 After use, replace the cigarette lighter or the socket cover otherwise any objects which fall into the cigarette lighter socket or the electrical socket may cause a short circuit. ◀

Cigarette lighter socket

To gain access to the power socket: Open the ashtray towards the front; before using, take the cigarette lighter or cover out of the socket.

In the luggage compartment



Access to the socket:
Open the cap.

In the centre console

Access to socket, see External devices on page 180.

Coupé: through-loading system

Opening



1. To release the rear-seat backrest, pull the corresponding lever in the luggage compartment.
2. The released rear-seat backrest moves forward slightly. Fold the backrest forwards by pushing the head restraint.



Closing

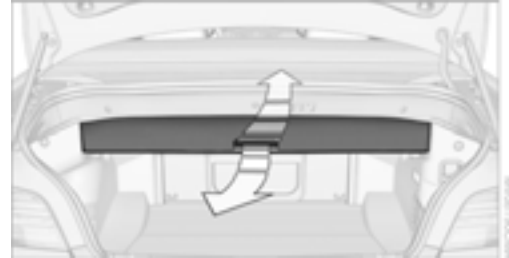
Fold the rear-seat backrest back into the position for sitting and engage it.

⚠ When returning the rear-seat backrest into the position for sitting, make sure that the seat's locking mechanism engages properly. Otherwise, cargo could be thrown about in the event of sharp braking or evasive manoeuvres and endanger the occupants. ◀

There are lashing eyes in the luggage compartment to which luggage compartment nets or retaining straps can be attached when loads have to be secured, see page 125.

Convertible: load

Increasing the luggage compartment capacity



You can increase the capacity of the luggage compartment when the convertible top is closed:

To do so, fold the luggage compartment partition upwards.

Before opening the convertible top, pull the luggage compartment partition downwards until it locks into place.

Make sure that no sharp objects strike the luggage compartment partition from below.

▶ The convertible top can only be opened when the luggage compartment partition is folded down. ◀

Stow compartments in the boot

Depending on your vehicle's equipment version, there are the following storage options in the luggage compartment:

- ▶ Rubber strap on left side trim panel for securing small objects, e.g. folding umbrella
- ▶ Net for small objects on the right side trim panel of the luggage compartment

- ▷ Tightening straps on the luggage compartment floor: to fix small objects or as a non-slip surface on which you can deposit objects

There are lashing eyes in the luggage compartment to which luggage compartment nets or retaining straps can be attached when loads have to be secured, see page 126.

Coupé: ski bag

The ski bag facilitates the safe and clean transport of up to four pairs of standard skis or up to two snowboards.

With the aid of the ski bag, you can stow skis up to a length of 2.0 m, approx. 6 ft 6 in. If skis of a length of 2.0 m, approx. 6 ft 6 in, are carried, however, the capacity of the ski bag is lower in view of its tapered design.

Loading

Make sure that skis and snowboards are cleaned before being inserted into the ski bag. Wrap protective material around sharp edges to prevent damage.

1. Fold down the centre panel in the rear-seat backrest.
2. Press the button, reach into the recess and fold down the hinged cover. Stabilise the cover in the folded-down position by placing the centre panel underneath it.



3. Open the Velcro fastener, spread the ski bag between the front seats and insert the skis or snowboards.


4. Engage the hook of the ski bag retaining strap in the eyelet at the side of the ski bag opening.



Securing the load



After loading the ski bag, secure the bag and its contents by tightening the retaining strap at its turnbuckle.

 Secure the ski bag in the manner described, as it could endanger the car's occupants, e.g. in case of heavy braking or sudden swerving. ◀

To stow away the ski bag, follow the opposite procedure as for loading.

Removing the ski bag

You can remove the ski bag for quick drying, for example, or if you want to use other fittings.



1. Fold down the centre panel in the rear-seat backrest.
2. Pull the handle, arrow 1.
3. Take out the fitting, arrow 2.



For more information on the various fittings available, contact BMW Service. ◀

Convertible: through-loading opening with integrated transport bag

The transport bag facilitates the safe and clean transport of up to four pairs of standard skis or up to two snowboards.

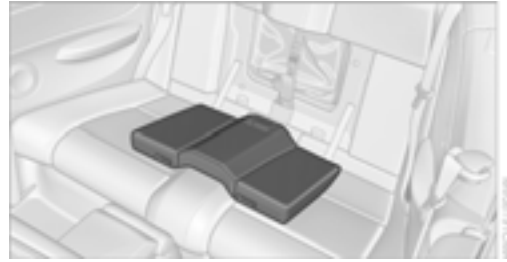
With the aid of the transport bag, you can stow skis up to a length of 2.0 m, approx. 6 ft 6 in. If skis of a length of 2.0 m, approx. 6 ft 6 in, are carried, however, the capacity of the ski bag is lower in view of its tapered design.



When the transport bag is used, it is no longer permitted to transport passengers on the rear seats. ◀

Loading

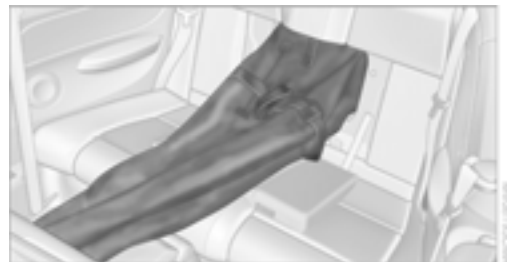
1. Pull the handle in the filler element of the rear backrest upwards and remove the filler element.
2. Place the filler element with the backrest side upwards on the seat cushion.



3. In the luggage compartment: press the handle recesses together and fold the cover downwards.



4. Open the belt and spread the transport bag between the front seats to fill it. The zip fastener makes objects in the bag easier to reach.




Make sure that skis and snowboards are cleaned before being inserted into the transport bag. Wrap protective material around sharp edges to prevent damage.

Securing the load



After loading the transport bag, secure the bag and its contents by tightening the retaining strap at its turnbuckle.

 Secure the transport bag in the manner described, as it could otherwise endanger the car's occupants, e.g. in case of heavy braking or sudden swerving. ◀

To stow away the transport bag, follow the opposite procedure as for loading.



Driving hints

Here is a variety of information that you may need in particular driving situations or operating modes.

Driving precautions

Vehicle equipment

This chapter describes all standard equipment, national market versions and optional equipment featured in the series. As such, it includes descriptions of equipment that might not be available in a vehicle on account of the optional equipment selected, for example, or the national-market version. This also applies for safety-relevant functions and systems.

Running in

Moving parts need a certain time to achieve maximum operating efficiency as a unit. Please comply with the following instructions, which are intended to ensure that your car achieves its optimum operating life and economy.

Engine and final drive

Observe the national speed limits in the country in which you are travelling.

Up to 2000 km, approx. 1200 miles

Drive at varying road and engine speeds, but do not exceed the following values:

- ▷ Petrol engine
4500 rpm, or 160 km/h, approx. 100 mph
- ▷ Diesel engine
3500 rpm, or 150 km/h, approx. 90 mph

Avoid full throttle and do not use the automatic gearbox kick-down.

From 2000 km, approx. 1200 miles, onwards

Engine and road speeds can be gradually increased.

Tyres

New tyres do not achieve their full road grip immediately, for production reasons. You

should therefore drive in a restrained manner for the first 300 km, approx. 200 miles.

Brake system

Brake pads and discs do not achieve a favourable wear and contact pattern until the car has covered about 500 km, approx. 300 miles. Drive with caution during this running in period.

Clutch

The clutch needs to be run in for about 500 km, approx. 300 miles, before it will operate with maximum efficiency. Operate the clutch gently while running it in.

After fitting new parts

The same running in procedures should be observed if any of the components mentioned above have to be renewed in the course of the car's operating life.

Saving fuel

The fuel consumption of your vehicle depends on various factors. A number of measures, your driving style and regular maintenance can influence fuel consumption and the burden on the environment.

Remove loaded items that are not required

Extra weight inflates fuel consumption.

Remove add-on parts after use

Remove auxiliary mirrors, roof racks and rear-mounted racks after use. Add-on parts on the vehicle interfere with its aerodynamic performance and inflate fuel consumption.

Close windows and the glass roof

An opened glass roof or opened window also increases the drag coefficient and thus the fuel consumption.

Check tyre pressures regularly

Check and, if necessary, correct the tyre inflation pressures at least twice a month and before setting off on a longer journey.

Insufficient tyre inflation pressure enlarges the rolling resistance and thus increases fuel consumption and tyre wear.

Drive off immediately

Do not warm up the engine with the car at a standstill; it is preferable to set off straight away, driving at moderate engine speeds. A cold engine will then reach its operating temperature faster.

Drive with foresight

Avoid accelerating and braking unnecessarily. To do so, maintain an appropriate gap between your car and the vehicle in front. An anticipatory and even driving style reduces fuel consumption.

Avoid high engine speeds

Only use 1st gear for driving off. As of 2nd gear, accelerate quickly. In doing so, avoid high engine speeds and upshift at an early stage.

When you reach the desired speed, shift to the highest possible gear and drive at low engine speed and constant speed, if possible.

As a general principle, the following applies: driving at lower engine speed lowers fuel consumption and reduces wear.

The gearshift point display of your BMW indicates the gear with the most favourable fuel consumption, see page [80](#).

Use the coasting mode

On approaching a red traffic light, take your foot off the accelerator and allow the vehicle to roll in the highest possible gear.

On downward stretches, take your foot off the accelerator and allow the car to roll in the appropriate gear.

In the coasting mode, the flow of fuel is cut off.

Switch off the engine during longer stops

When you stop the car for longer periods, e.g. at traffic lights, railway crossings or in traffic jams, switch off the engine.

Automatic start/stop function

Your vehicle's automatic start/stop function switches the engine off automatically during a stop.

Switching the engine off and then restarting it uses less fuel and produces fewer emissions than allowing the engine to run permanently. Even switching the engine off for just a few seconds can result in savings.

For more information on the automatic start/stop function, see page [64](#).

Switch off functions that are not absolutely necessary at the moment


Functions such as the air conditioner, seat heating or rear window heating use a lot of energy and consume additional fuel. Their influence is particularly strong in city traffic and stop and go traffic situations. For this reason, switch these functions off if they are not really required.

Have maintenance carried out

Have the vehicle serviced regularly to achieve the optimal economy and service life for your vehicle. BMW recommends that you have servicing work performed by your Service Centre. See also the BMW Maintenance System, page [243](#).

General driving notes


Close the luggage area lid

 Drive only with the lid closed. If the lid is not closed, in the event of an accident or during braking or when taking evasive action, the safety of passengers and other road users could be put at risk and the vehicle may sustain damage. Furthermore, exhaust gases could enter the passenger compartment. ◀

If it is nevertheless necessary to travel with the lid open, observe the following precautions:

1. Close all the windows and the glass roof.
2. Significantly increase the air flow from the automatic air-conditioning system, see page 109.
3. Drive with caution.


Hot exhaust system

 High temperatures occur in the exhaust system of all vehicles. Never remove the heat shields protecting this area, nor apply underseal to them. Make sure that when the vehicle is driven or parked and when the engine is idling, no easily flammable material such as hay, leaves, grass, etc. comes into contact with the hot exhaust pipe. It could ignite and cause a fire, with the risk of severe injuries or damage. Do not touch hot exhaust tail pipes; otherwise there is a risk of burns. ◀


Diesel particle filter

The diesel particle filter collects soot particles and burns them periodically at high temperatures. This cleaning procedure takes several minutes. Under some circumstances, you may notice it by the fact that the engine temporarily runs more roughly and requires a higher engine speed for normal power development. In addition, the exhaust may cause some noise and emit a small amount of smoke, even after the engine has been switched off.

Mobile radio in your vehicle


 We do not recommend using mobile radio devices such as mobile phones in your vehicle unless they are connected directly to an exterior aerial. Otherwise there is a risk of mutual interference between the vehicle electronics and your mobile radio device. Furthermore, there is no guarantee that the radiation emitted by the transmitting device will be discharged out of the passenger compartment. ◀

Aquaplaning


 When driving on wet or slushy surfaces, reduce speed to prevent a wedge of water from forming between the tyre and the road. This situation, known as aquaplaning, means that the tyre can actually lose contact completely with the road surface, so that neither the car can be steered nor the brake be properly applied. ◀

The risk of aquaplaning increases with declining tread depth on the tyres, see also Minimum tread depth on page 230.

Driving through water

 Drive through water only to a max. depth of 30 cm, approx. 12 in, and no faster than walking pace, otherwise the engine, electrical system and transmission may be damaged. ◀

Apply the handbrake on uphill gradients

 Never try to prevent the car from rolling back on an uphill gradient by slipping the clutch for a longer period; always apply the handbrake. The clutch will otherwise wear rapidly. ◀

In the 125i and 135i, the drive-off assistant also provides support, see page 93.


Safe braking

Your BMW is equipped with ABS as standard. In situations where it is necessary, it is best to brake as hard as possible. As the car remains steerable, you can still avoid any obstacles,

keeping your handling of the steering wheel as smooth and controlled as possible.

Pulsation of the brake pedal combined with hydraulic modulation noises indicates that the ABS is active.

Objects in the movement range of the pedals

 Make sure that pedal functions are not impaired during travel by floor mats, carpets or other objects.


Do not place additional floor mats on top of existing floor mats or other objects.

Only use floor mats that have been approved for the vehicle and can be fastened accordingly. If you remove floor mats, for cleaning for example, make sure that you fasten them securely back in place. ◀

Wet conditions


In wet conditions or heavy rain, lightly apply the brakes every few miles. When doing so, make sure you are not obstructing or causing a danger to other road users. The heat generated dries out the brake discs and pads. If needed, full braking force will then be available immediately.

Downhill gradients

 To avoid impairing the efficiency of the brake system as a result of overheating, drive down long or steep descents in the gear that allows you to keep brake applications to a minimum. Otherwise even slight, continuous pressure on the brake could cause overheating, brake pad wear or even brake system failure. ◀

You can increase the engine's braking effect by shifting down, all the way to first gear if necessary. This avoids overloading the brakes.

Downshifting in manual mode of the automatic gearbox, see page 67.

 Sports automatic transmission with double clutch: never drive with the transmission in neutral or with the engine switched off; engine braking action will not be present, or

there will be no power assistance to the brakes or steering.

Manual gearbox: never drive with the clutch held down, with the gearbox in neutral or with the engine switched off; engine braking action will not be present, or there will be no power assistance to the brakes or steering. Make sure that pedal functions are not impaired by floor mats, carpets or other objects. ◀

Corrosion of brake discs


If the car is used for short distances only, is parked for lengthy periods or subjected to only minor loads, the brake discs will be particularly susceptible to corrosion and the brake pads will collect dirt; this is because the brake pressure necessary for a self-cleaning effect is not generated.


When the brakes are applied, corroded discs tend to judder, and even lengthy brake applications usually fail to eliminate this effect entirely.

When vehicle is parked

Moisture condensate forms in the automatic air conditioning and is discharged underneath the vehicle. Traces of water on the ground are therefore normal.

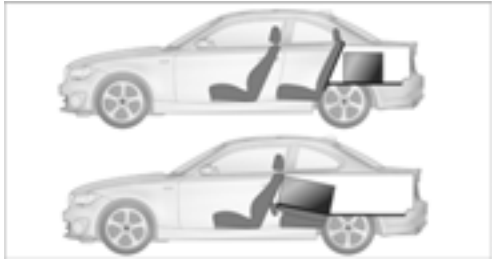
Load

 Avoid overloading the vehicle, as this could cause the tyres' load capacity limit to be exceeded. The tyres could then overheat and sustain internal damage. This could lead to sudden loss of tyre pressure. ◀

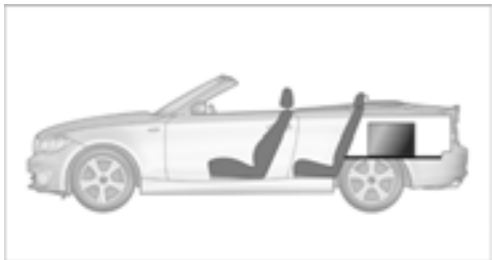
 Make sure that no fluids are leaking in the luggage compartment. Otherwise the vehicle could be damaged. ◀

Loading

Coupé



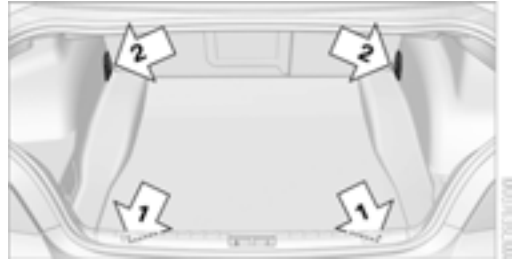
Convertible



Stow cargo

- ▷ Position heavy objects as low and as far forward as possible, ideally directly behind the rear seat backs.
- ▷ Wrap protective material round sharp corners and edges.
- ▷ When carrying very heavy loads with no passengers on the back seat, insert both seat belts into the respective opposite buckles.

Securing the load



- ▷ Small and relatively light items can be retained with tensioning straps, a luggage compartment net or other suitable straps.
- ▷ Tensioning straps can be obtained from Service for larger and heavier items. There are two lashing eyes, arrows 1, set in the rear wall of the luggage compartment. Depending on the equipment version, two other lashing eyes, arrows 2, are located on the side walls of the luggage compartment. Please note the information supplied with load securing equipment.



Always stow and secure the load as described above, so that it cannot endanger the car's occupants, for example if sudden braking or avoiding action is necessary. Do not exceed the car's permitted gross weight or the axle load limits, see page 267, otherwise the car's operating safety may be endangered and the construction and use regulations infringed.

Heavy or hard objects should not be carried loose inside the car, since they could be dislodged, for example by heavy braking, sudden avoiding action or similar, and endanger the occupants.

Use only the lashing eyes that are illustrated to secure lashing straps. Do not secure any objects with the upper attachment points for ISOFIX, see page 59, as otherwise these could be damaged. ◀

Coupé: roof rack

A special roof rack system is available as an optional accessory for your BMW. Please observe the directions contained in the installation instructions.

Mounting points



Open the cover.

Loading the roof rack

A loaded roof rack alters the car's road behaviour and steering response quite considerably, by shifting its centre of gravity. When loading the roof rack, ensure that the specified roof load limit, the vehicle's gross weight limit and the axle loads are not exceeded.

The relevant figures are shown in the Weights section on page 267.

The roof load must be distributed uniformly and should not be too large in area. Heavy items should always be placed at the bottom. Make sure that there is sufficient clearance for raising the glass roof and that no objects extend back into the movement range of the luggage area lid.

Correct, secure loading of the roof rack will prevent items from shifting or falling off during the journey.

Drive smoothly and avoid violent acceleration, braking or cornering.

Towing a trailer

Vehicles built with a factory-installed trailer tow hitch come with the standard equipment of reinforced springs at the rear axle and, depending on the vehicle model, with a more powerful engine cooling system.

Permissible trailer load, see technical data.

Trailer tow hitch with removable ball head, see page 129.

Before a journey

Nose weight

It is important to ensure that the nose weight is never less than a minimum of 25 kg or 55 lb. The permissible maximum trailer nose weight limit is given in the technical data. The nose weight should be kept close to this limit.

The trailer's nose weight affects the towing vehicle and thus increases its weight. The weight of the trailer tow hitch and the nose weight reduce the maximum payload of your BMW. Please ensure that these do not cause the gross weight limit of the towing vehicle to be exceeded if a trailer is being towed.

Loads

When loading the trailer, make sure that the weight is kept as low as possible and stowed if possible close to the axle.

A low centre of trailer gravity makes the outfit much more stable and safe to drive.

Do not exceed either the trailer's permitted gross weight or the specified permitted towing load for the vehicle. The smaller value is the limit which should be adhered to.

Tyre pressures

Check the vehicle's and the trailer's tyre pressures most carefully. For the car, the tyre inflation pressures for heavy loads apply, see page 230. After each correction of the tyre pressures, reinitialise the Run Flat Indicator,

see page 93. For the trailer, comply with the manufacturer's specifications.

Run Flat Indicator

Reinitialise the Run Flat Indicator after a trailer has been attached or detached, see page 93.

Exterior mirrors

Two exterior mirrors which bring both rear corners of the trailer into your field of view are required by law. Mirrors of this type can be obtained from Service as optional accessories.

Electrical consumers

When towing a caravan, try to avoid operating electrical equipment for too long at a time, in order to limit the drain on the vehicle's battery.

The power output of the trailer's rear lights must not exceed the following values:


Flashing turn indicators: 42 W each side

Tail lights: 60 W each side

Brake lights: 42 W total


Rear fog lights: 42 W total


Reversing lights: 42 W total.

 Before starting a journey, check that the trailer's rear lights are operating correctly.

Driving without functioning rear lights could endanger other road users. ◀

Towing a trailer

 Adapt your speed accordingly when towing a trailer. Dependent upon design and load, some trailers will start to snake at and above speeds of approx. 80 km/h, approx. 50 mph. ◀

 When towing a trailer, increase the inflation pressure by 0.2 bar, approx. 2.9 psi, and do not exceed speeds of 100 km/h, approx. 60 mph, otherwise the increased axle weight could damage the tyres. Do not exceed the maximum possible inflation pressure indicated on the tyres. ◀

In the event of a flat tyre in conjunction with run-flat tyres, comply with the instructions on page 94.

Counteracting snaking

If the trailer nevertheless begins to snake, the outfit can only be stabilised by braking hard immediately. Only attempt to steer out of the situation if this is absolutely essential, and make any steering movements as cautiously as possible and without endangering other road users.

Trailer Stability Control

The system helps you to neutralise a trailer's tendency to swing from side to side. It detects snaking movements and promptly brakes the vehicle so that road speeds fall to below the critical range and the outfit is stabilised.

The system functions whenever a trailer is towed and connected to the corresponding power socket, at road speeds of at least approx. 65 km/h, approx. 40 mph.

If the power socket for the trailer is in use but no trailer is attached, for example during use of a bicycle carrier with lights, the system may become active in extreme driving situations.

The system cannot intervene if the trailer veers instantly, e.g. on slippery or loose road surfaces. Trailers with a high centre of gravity can tip over before any snaking motion is detected.

The system is not operational if DSC is deactivated or malfunctioning, see page 91.

Uphill gradients

In the interest of safety and to avoid holding up other traffic, do not attempt to climb gradients steeper than 12 % when towing a trailer. If a supplementary permit for heavier trailer loads has been obtained, the limit is 8 %; see the technical data.

Downhill gradients

Special care must be taken when descending gradients, where a trailer is more susceptible to

snaking.

Before starting to descend, always change down to the next lower gear, if necessary as far as first gear, and drive down the hill slowly.

Trailer tow hitch with removable ball head

General guidance

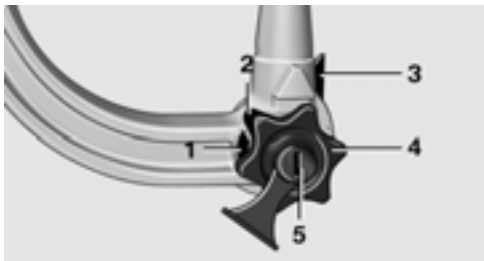
The detachable ball head is stowed underneath the floor mat in the luggage compartment.



The fixtures for the removable ball head and the trailer socket are located on the vehicle underbody behind the bumper.

Follow the care instructions, see page 248.

Ball head



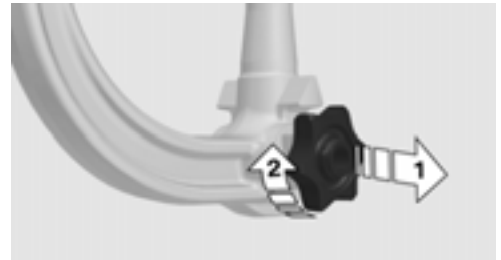
- 1 Green mark
- 2 Green or red mark on the handwheel
- 3 Release lever
- 4 Handwheel
- 5 Protective cap for lock or key

Attaching the ball head

Before attaching the ball head

The locking mechanism must be prepared before attaching the ball head:


1. If the key is not in position in the lock: open the lock with the key.
2. Pull out the handwheel in the direction of arrow 1 and turn it in the direction of arrow 2 as far as the stop.



The ball head can be used if:


- ▷ The release lever is in place on the ball head
- ▷ The red mark on the handwheel is above the green section of the ball head

Inserting the ball head

 Whilst the ball head is being inserted, keep your hands away from the handwheel; otherwise, you might become trapped and be in danger of injury. ◀

1. Pull the cover plug on the fixture down and off and store it inside the vehicle.
2. Insert the ball head into the fixture on the vehicle from below and push it up until it engages.
3. Engage the lock in the handwheel.
4. Remove the key.
5. Cover the lock with the protective cap.

Checking that the mechanism is locked

 Before driving off with a trailer or carrier attached, check that the ball head is

locked correctly; otherwise there is a risk of unstable driving conditions and accidents. ◀

If the ball head starts to shake, check that it is engaged correctly.

If the ball head is not attached securely, carry out the following checks:

- ▷ Check that the green mark on the handwheel is located above the green section of the ball head
- ▷ Check that the handwheel is positioned flush with the ball head
- ▷ Check that the lock is engaged and the key has been removed

If the above checks are OK and the ball head is not secure, do not use the trailer hitch. Have it checked by Service.

Removing the ball head

1. Remove the protective cap from the lock.
2. Insert the key and release the lock in the handwheel.
The key engages when the lock is open.
3. Take hold of the ball head.
4. Pull out the handwheel in the direction of arrow **1** and turn it in the direction of arrow **2** as far as the stop.
5. Pull the ball head down and out of the fixture.
6. Cover the key with the protective cap.
The key remains in the lock.
7. Insert the cover plug into the fixture.
8. Put the ball head back into the luggage compartment for storage.



Navigation

This chapter describes how you can enter destinations and choose your route, so that your navigation system guides you reliably to your destination.

Navigation system

Vehicle equipment

This chapter describes all standard equipment, national market versions and optional equipment featured in the series. Therefore, it also makes reference to equipment which might not be available in a vehicle due to the optional accessories selected or national market versions, for example. This also applies for safety-relevant functions and systems.


General guidance

The navigation system can determine the precise position of the vehicle by means of satellites and vehicle sensors and guide you reliably to any specified destination.



Only enter data when the vehicle is standing still, and always obey the actual traffic regulations and road signs in the event of any contradiction between the traffic situation and the instructions given by the navigation system. Failure to do so may result in a violation of traffic laws and put the vehicle's occupants and other road users at risk. ◀

Calling up the navigation system

-  Press the button.
- "Navigation"



The navigation system can also be called up directly with the button on the controller.

Navigation data

General guidance

You can obtain navigation data and the enable code from Service. Navigation data is saved in the vehicle and can be updated.

- ▷ Dependent upon data volume it can take several hours to update data.
- ▷ Update data whilst driving to preserve the battery.
- ▷ Whilst the data is being updated, only the main functions of the navigation system are available.

The update will automatically continue after a break in the journey.

- ▷ You can check the status of the update.
- ▷ Data is saved in the vehicle.
- ▷ The system restarts when the update is complete.
- ▷ The medium containing the navigation data can be removed once the update is complete.

Information about navigation data

- "Navigation"
- Call up "Options".
- "Navigation system version":
Information regarding the version of the data is displayed.


Navigation system Professional: Updating navigation data

Inserting navigation DVD

- Insert the navigation DVD in the DVD player with the labelled side upwards.
- Follow the instructions on the control display.
- Enter the enable code of the navigation DVD and, if necessary, change the DVD.

Removing navigation DVD




1. Press button  1.
The DVD is partially ejected out of the drive.
2. Remove the DVD.

Navigation system Business: Updating navigation data

1. Insert a USB medium containing navigation data into the USB interface in the glove compartment.
2. Follow the instructions on the control display.
3. Enter the enable code of the USB device.

Querying the status

1.  Press the button.
2. "Navigation update"

Destination input

Vehicle equipment

This chapter describes all standard equipment, national market versions and optional equipment featured in the series. Therefore, it also makes reference to equipment which might not be available in a vehicle due to the optional accessories selected or national market versions, for example. This also applies for safety-relevant functions and systems.

General guidance


You can choose from the following options for entering a destination:

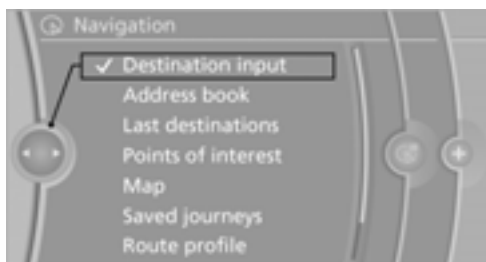
- ▷ Entering a destination manually, see below
- ▷ Selecting a destination from the address book, see page 138
- ▷ Last destinations, see page 139
- ▷ Points of interest, see page 139
- ▷ Entering a destination via map, see page 141
- ▷ Home address selection, see page 139
- ▷ Using the voice control system to enter a destination, see page 142
- ▷ Destination input via BMW Assist, see page 141

You can also store a navigation destination on the favourites buttons, see page 22.

Entering a destination manually

The system assists you when entering the names of places and streets by automatically completing and comparing entries, see page 146. This makes it possible to enter different spellings, and entries are completed automatically so that stored place names and streets can be called up quickly.

1.  Press the button.
2. "Navigation"
3. "Destination input"



In addition, the system supports you with the following special features:

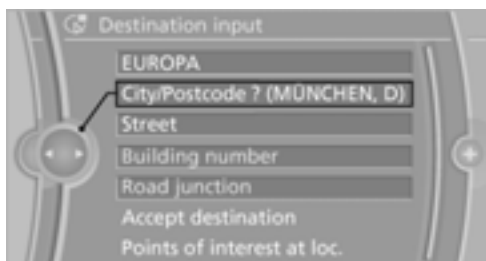
- ▷ If you do not enter a street name, you will be guided to the centre of the town/city.
- ▷ You can skip input of the country, town/city if you wish to retain previous inputs.

Entering a country

1. "Navigation"
2. "Destination input"
3. Select "Country" or the country displayed.



Entering a town/city

1. Select "City/Postcode" or the town/city displayed.



2. Select letters as applicable.
The list gets shorter with each letter you enter.

To delete letters:

- ▷ To delete individual letters:
Turn the controller until  is highlighted, and press the controller.
- ▷ To delete all letters:
Turn the controller until  is highlighted, and press the controller for longer than usual.


To enter spaces:

- ▷ Select the  symbol.

The list is gradually narrowed down with every subsequent letter that you enter.

3. Tilt the controller to the right.
 4. Select a town/city name from the list.
- If there are several places with the same name:
1. Move to the list of place names.
 2. Highlight the town/city.
 3. Select the town/city.

Entering the postcode

1. Select "City/Postcode" or the town/city displayed.
2. Select the  symbol.
3. Select digits.
4. Move to the list of postal codes and towns/cities.
5. Highlight the entry.
6. Select the entry.

Entering a street and junction

1. Select "Street" or the displayed street.
2. Enter the street and junction in the same way as you entered the town/city.

After entering the street, you can add the junction or house number.

If there are several streets with the same name:

1. Move to the list of street names.
2. Highlight the street.
3. Select the street.

Alternatively: entering a street and house number

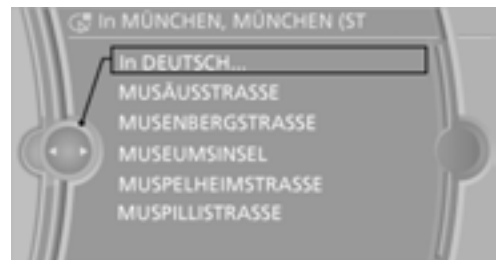
1. Select "Street" or the displayed street.
2. Enter the street in the same way as you entered the town/city.
3. "Building number"
4. Select digits.
5. Move to the list of house numbers.
6. Select the house number or a range of house numbers.

There is no street by this name at the destination.

The street you are looking for does not exist in the town/city you entered, as it is located in a different place.

1. "Navigation"
2. "Destination input"
3. Select "Street" or the displayed street.
4. Move to the list of street names.
5. Select "In" the desired country.

A list of all roads in the country entered is displayed. The respective town/city is shown after the street name.



6. Select the letters.
7. Move to the list of street names.
8. Highlight the street.
9. Select the street.

Starting route guidance after destination input

1. "Accept destination"
 2. "Start guidance" or "Add as another destination", see page 144.
- ▷ Set "Route criteria", see page 146.
 - ▷ Search "Points of interest at loc.", see page 139.

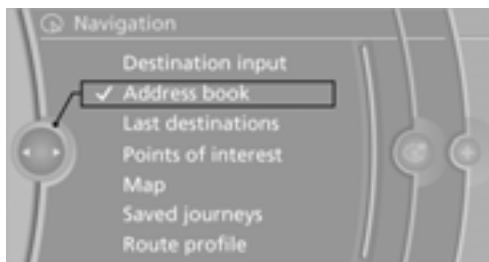
Address book

Creating contacts, see page 215.

Selecting a destination from the address book

1. "Navigation"
2. "Address book"
Contacts with addresses are displayed if these addresses have been checked as destinations.


If the contacts with addresses from the mobile phone or BMW Online address book are not displayed, they must first be checked as destinations, see page 205.

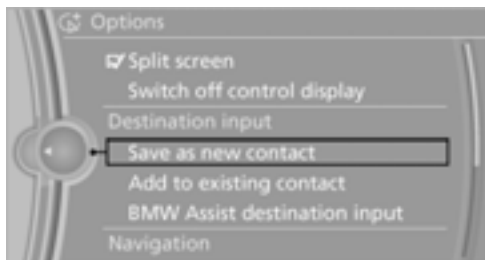


3. Select a contact from the list or use "A-Z search" if applicable.
4. If applicable, either "Work address" or "Home address"

Storing a destination in the address book

After destination input, save the destination in the address book.

1. "Navigation"
2. "Map"
3.  "Guidance"
4. Call up "Options".
5. "Save as new contact" or "Add to existing contact".

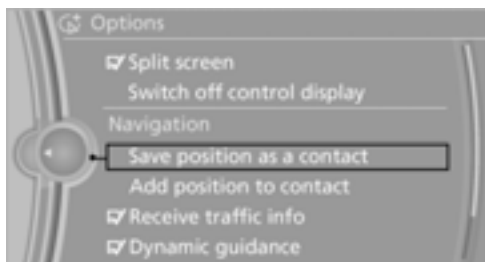


6. If applicable, select an existing contact.
7. "Work address" or "Home address"
8. Enter "Surname" and, if applicable, "First name".
9. "Save in car"

Memorising position

The current position can be stored in the address book.

1. "Navigation"
2. Call up "Options".
3. "Save position as a contact" or "Add position to contact".



4. Depending on the selection, either select an existing contact from the list or select the type of address and enter the surname and first name.
5. "Save in car"

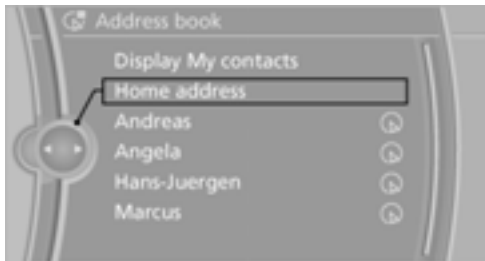
Editing or deleting an address

1. "Navigation"
2. "Address book"
3. Highlight the entry.
4. Call up "Options".
5. "Edit in Contacts" or "Delete entry".

Accepting home address as destination

The home address has to be created. Enter the home address, see page 215.

1. "Navigation"
2. "Address book"
3. "Home address"



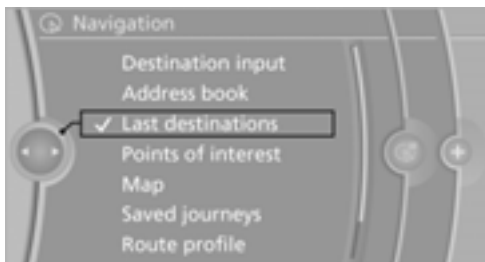
4. "Start guidance"

Last destinations

The last destinations reached are stored automatically. These destinations can be called up and incorporated into route guidance.

Calling up last destinations

1. "Navigation"
2. "Last destinations"



3. Select the destination.
4. "Start guidance" or "Add as another destination"

Editing a destination

Destinations can be edited, e.g. to change the house number in an existing entry.

1. "Navigation"
2. "Last destinations"
3. Highlight the destination.
4. Call up "Options".
5. "Edit destination"

Deleting last destinations

1. "Navigation"
2. "Last destinations"
3. Highlight the destination.
4. Call up "Options".
5. "Delete entry" or "Delete all last destinations".

Points of interest

General guidance

Even with the most up-to-date navigation data, information about individual points of interest may have changed. Filling stations might have closed, for example.


Calling up the search for points of interest

1. "Navigation"
2. "Points of interest"


The search can be defined according to the location and type of the point of interest.

With Professional navigation system: Google™ local search

1. "Google™ Local Search"
2. "City"

3. Select or enter a town/city.
4. "Keyword"
5. Enter a keyword.
Suggestions are displayed.
6. Select a suggestion.
The list of points of interest is displayed.
7. Select a point of interest.
Detailed information is displayed.
If multiple details are stored, you can scroll from one page to another.
If a phone number has been stored, a telephone connection can be established.
8. Select the  symbol.
9. "Start guidance" or "Add as another destination"
Add destination as another destination, see page 144.

Online search

1. "Google™ Local Search"
2. Select a point of interest.
3. Select the  symbol.
4. "Start guidance"

Location of the points of interest

Various options can be selected when entering a search location.


- ▷ "At current location"
- ▷ "At destination"
- ▷ "At another place"
- ▷ "Along the route"

A-Z search

1. "A-Z search"
2. "City"
3. Select or enter a town/city.
4. "Category"
5. Select a category.
6. "Category details"
Multiple category details can be selected


for some points of interest.

To exit the category details, tilt the controller to the left.

7. "Keyword"
8. Enter a keyword.
The list of points of interest is displayed.
9. Select a point of interest.
Detailed information is displayed.
If multiple details are stored, you can scroll from one page to another.
If a phone number has been stored, a telephone connection can be established.
10. Select the  symbol.
11. "Start guidance" or "Add as another destination". Add destination as another destination, see page 144.

"Start search": if you do not enter a search term, the search will start with the last search term saved.

Category search

1. "Category search"
2. "City"
3. Select or enter a town/city.
4. "Category"
5. Select a category.
6. "Category details"
Multiple category details can be selected for some points of interest.
To exit the category details, tilt the controller to the left.
7. "Start search"
The list of points of interest is displayed.
8. Select a point of interest.
Detailed information is displayed.
If multiple details are stored, you can scroll from one page to another.
If a phone number has been stored, a telephone connection can be established.
9. Select the  symbol.

- "Start guidance" or "Add as another destination". Add destination as another destination, see page 144.

Displaying points of interest

List of points of interest: points of interest are displayed sorted by their distance from the destination and with a direction arrow pointing towards the destination.

With Professional navigation system:

Points of interest in the selected category are displayed as symbols in the map view. The display depends on the map scale and the category.

Destination input via BMW Assist

A connection is established to the information service, see page 215.

- "Navigation"
- "Destination input"
- Call up "Options".
- "BMW Assist dest. input"

With Professional navigation system: Additional information via BMW Online

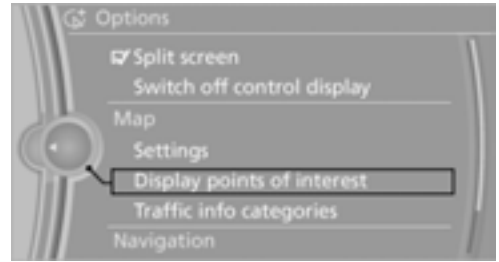
- "Navigation"
- "Points of interest"
- Select a point of interest.
- Call up "Options".
- "Further info (BMW Online)"

Displaying points of interest in the map

To show symbols for the points of interest in the map:

- "Navigation"
- "Map"
- Call up "Options".

- "Display points of interest"



- Select the settings.

Destination entry via map

If you know only where a destination or road is located, you can use the map to enter the destination.

Selecting a destination


- "Navigation"
- "Map"

The current position of the vehicle is displayed on the map.

-  "Interactive map"



- Select the destination with the cross-hairs.
 - ▷ Change the scale: turn the controller.
 - ▷ Move the map: tilt the controller in the corresponding direction.
 - ▷ Move the map diagonally: tilt the controller in the corresponding direction and turn it.

5. Press the controller to display more menu items.
 - ▷ Select the  symbol: "Start guidance" or "Add as another destination".
 - ▷ "Search for points of int.": the search for points of interest starts.

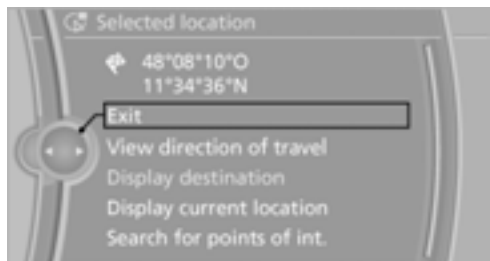
Specifying the street/road


If the system does not find a street, one of the following is displayed:

- ▷ The name of a nearby street
- ▷ The name of the district
- ▷ The destination co-ordinates

Interactive map

In the interactive map, the scale can be set and the map section shifted. Other functions are made available by pressing the controller:



- ▷ Select the  symbol. "Start guidance" or "Add as another destination"
- ▷ "Exit interactive map": Back to the map view.
- ▷ "View north-oriented" or "View direction of travel"
- ▷ "Display destination": map section around the destination is displayed.
- ▷ "Display current location": Map section around the current location is displayed.
- ▷ "Search for points of int.", see page 139.

Using the voice control system to enter a destination

General guidance

Instructions for the voice control system, see page 24.

- ▷ During destination entry using voice control, it is possible at any time to switch between voice commands and entries via iDrive; to do so, reactivate the voice control system if necessary.
- ▷ To have possible commands read out: ›Voice commands‹



Saying inputs

- ▷ With Professional navigation system: The town/city, street name and house number can be entered in a single command.
- ▷ Countries, towns/cities, streets and junctions can be spoken as whole words in the system language or spelled out, see page 89.

Example: to enter a town/city within Germany as a whole word, the language of the system must be German.

- ▷ Spell your input if the destination is located in an area where a language other than the system language is spoken.
- ▷ Please pronounce letters fluently and avoid excessive emphasis and long pauses.
- ▷ The input options depend on the navigation data and the country and language settings in each case.<

Professional navigation system: Entering the address in a single command



1. Press the  button on the steering wheel.
-  2. ›Destination input‹
3. Wait for the system prompt.

4. Say the address in the suggested sequence.
5. Continue input as specified by the system. If required, say each part of the address separately, e.g. town/city.

Entering a town/city

The name of the town/city can be spelled out or said as an entire word.

With the destination input menu displayed:

1. Press the  button on the steering wheel.
2.  ›City‹ or ›Spell name of city‹.
3. Wait for the system to ask for the town/city.
4. Say the name of the town/city or, if applicable, at least the first three letters.

Depending on the input, up to 20 towns/cities are suggested.

5. Select town/city:
 - ▶ Select one of the displayed towns/cities: ›Yes‹
 - ▶ Select other town/city: ›New entry‹
 - ▶ Select entry, e.g. ›Entry ...‹
 - ▶ Spell your input: ›Spell name of city‹

6. Continue input as specified by the system. If there are several places with the same name:

Towns/cities with the same name are listed separately. They are displayed followed by three full stops.

1. Select an entry:

 ›Yes‹ or ›Entry ...‹, e.g. entry 2.

2. Select the required town/city.


The town or city can also be selected from the list via iDrive: turn the controller until the town/city is selected, and press the controller.

Entering a street or junction


Streets and junctions are entered in the same way as towns/cities.

Entering a house number

Dependent upon the data existing in the navigation system, house numbers up to 2000 can be input.

1.  ›Building number‹
2. Say the house number.
3. Continue input as specified by the system.

Starting route guidance


1.  ›Start guidance‹

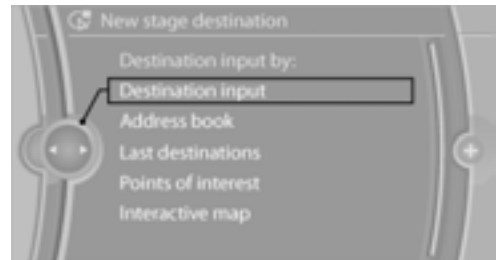
Route guidance is started immediately.

Planning a trip with intermediate destinations

New trip

A trip can be planned around intermediate destinations.

1. "Navigation"
2. "Map"
3. If necessary, tilt the controller to the left.
4.  "Guidance"
5. "Enter new destination"
6. Select the type of destination input.



7. Enter the intermediate destination.
8. "Start guidance"

Entering a trip destination


Up to 30 intermediate destinations can be entered.

1. "Enter new destination"
2. Select the type of destination input.
3. Enter the intermediate destination.
4. "Add as another destination"
The intermediate destination is added to the destination list and highlighted.
5. Turn the controller to move the intermediate destination to the required position in the list.
6. Press controller.

Starting the trip

Once you have entered all intermediate destinations, mark the first destination and "Start guidance"

If, for example, the second destination is selected when you start route guidance, the first destination is skipped.

 symbol identifies the active intermediate destination.

With Professional navigation system: Saving a trip

Up to 30 trips can be saved in the trip list. You might have to delete existing trips in order to be able to save new ones.

1. Call up "Options".
2. "Save journey"
3. Enter a name.
4. "OK"

The trip is stored in the trip list under the name that is entered.

With Professional navigation system: Selecting saved trips


1. "Navigation"
2. "Saved journeys"
3. Select the desired trip.
4. "Start guidance"

Changing trips


These functions are not available in the case of imported trips or Guided Tours.

Reversing the direction of a trip

Intermediate destinations are displayed in reverse order in the list.

1. "Map"
2.  "Guidance"
3. Call up "Options".
4. "Reverse stage dest. order"

Options for intermediate destinations

1. "Map"
2.  "Guidance"
3. "Display all stage dest."
4. Select an intermediate destination.
 - ▷ "Edit destination"
 - ▷ "Reposition stage dest.": move the intermediate destination in the list.
 - ▷ "Delete stage destination"
 - ▷ "Go to the next stage dest."

Not all options are possible for all trips.

With Professional navigation system: Deleting saved trips

1. "Navigation"
2. "Saved journeys"
3. Select the desired trip.
4. Call up "Options".
5. "Delete all journeys" or "Delete journey".

With Professional navigation system: Importing trips via a USB medium

1. Switch on ignition.
2. Insert a USB medium into the USB interface in the glove box.
3. "Navigation"
4. "Saved journeys"
5. "Import journeys"


6. "USB"
7. "OK"

No more than 30 trips can be saved on the USB medium and in the navigation system combined. If more than 30 trips are stored in total, an import will not be possible.

With Professional navigation system: Importing trips via BMW Online

1. "Navigation"
2. "Saved journeys"
3. "Import journeys"
4. "BMW Online"

With Professional navigation system: Calling up the last trip

1. "Navigation"
2. "Saved journeys"
3. "Last journey"
4.  "Start guidance"

With Professional navigation system: Guided tours

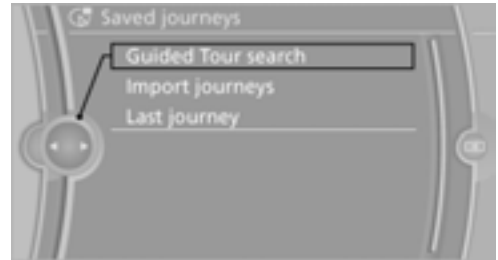
General guidance


You can add recommended routes such as holiday routes to route guidance. To avoid altering the route character, the route criteria cannot be changed here.

Starting guided tours


1. "Navigation"
2. "Saved journeys"

3. "Guided Tour search"



4. Select "Country" and "Region" or search criteria:
 - ▷ "Search for name"
 - ▷ "Search for nearest Tour"
5. "Start search" if applicable
6. Select a guided tour.
7.  "Start guidance"
8. "Start guidance"

Ending guided tours

1. "Navigation"
2. "Map"
3.  "Guidance".
4. "Stop guidance"

Route guidance

Vehicle equipment

This chapter describes all standard equipment, national market versions and optional equipment featured in the series. Therefore, it also makes reference to equipment which might not be available in a vehicle due to the optional accessories selected or national market versions, for example. This also applies for safety-relevant functions and systems.

Starting route guidance


1. "Navigation"
2. Destination input, see page 136.
3. "Accept destination"
4. "Start guidance"

Once the route has been calculated, it is shown on the control display.

The distance to the destination/intermediate destination and the estimated time of arrival are shown in the map view.

The arrow view might also appear on the control display.

Exiting route guidance

1. "Navigation"
2. "Map"
3.  "Guidance".
4. "Stop guidance"

Continuing route guidance

Route guidance can be resumed if you did not reach your destination during the last trip.







"Resume guidance"

Route criteria

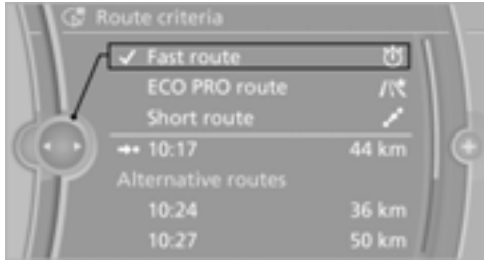
General guidance

- ▷ The calculated route can be manipulated by selecting certain criteria.
- ▷ Route criteria can be modified during both destination input and route guidance.
- ▷ Street types are part of the navigation data. They are taken into account in route planning, e.g. avoid highways.
- ▷ The route suggested might not be what you expect.
- ▷ The settings are saved for the remote control currently in use.
- ▷ With Professional navigation system: The route criteria for guided tours cannot be changed.
- ▷ Route guidance with traffic information, see page 152.

Altering route criteria

1. "Navigation"
2. "Map"
3.    "Route criteria"
4. Select a criterion:
 - ▷  "Fast route": time-optimised route; combination of shortest possible distance and fast roads
 - ▷  "ECO PRO route": optimised combination of fastest and shortest route
 - ▷  "Short route": shortest distance without taking time into account
 - ▷ "Alternative routes": are suggested, if possible, when route guidance is active. With Professional navigation system:

The route criteria for guided tours cannot be changed.



5. If necessary, select supplementary route criteria. Where possible, these selected criteria are avoided on the route.
 - ▷ "Avoid motorways": avoids motorways if possible.
 - ▷ "Avoid toll roads": avoids toll roads if possible.
 - ▷ "Avoid pre-paid roads": avoids roads where toll vignettes are required if possible.
 - ▷ "Avoid ferries": avoids ferries if possible.

The setting applies to the current route and the planning of other routes.

Course of route

General guidance

A number of views of the course of your route are available during route guidance; these vary dependent upon equipment:

- ▷ Arrow view on the control display.
- ▷ List of the sections of a route.
- ▷ Map view, see page 149.

Arrow view

The following information is displayed during route guidance:

- ▷ Large arrow: current direction of travel.
- ▷ Small arrow: indicates next change of direction.

- ▷ Junction view
- ▷ Lane information
- ▷ Traffic information.
- ▷ Distance to next change of direction
- ▷ Street name at next change of direction

Lane information

In the case of streets with multiple lanes, the recommended lanes are each marked with a triangle in the arrow view.

- ▷ Solid triangle: best lane to use
- ▷ Blank triangle: this lane can also be used. However, you might need to change lanes shortly.

Displaying the list of the sections of a route

When route guidance is started, a list of the sections of a route can be displayed. For each section of the route, the distance to be driven and the traffic information are displayed.

1. "Navigation"
2. "Route profile"
3. Mark a section of the route.

With Professional navigation system:

The section of the route is displayed in the preview map.

Avoiding sections of a route

You can also instruct the navigation system to deviate from sections of the route during route guidance. To do this, tell the system how many kilometres you wish to travel before reverting to the original route.

1. "Navigation"
2. "Route profile"

- "Create new route for"



- Turn the controller: enter the desired number of kilometres.
- Press controller.

Cancelling bypassing


To cease bypassing the section of route:

- "Navigation"
- "Route profile"
- "Create new route for"
- "Cancel new route"

Refuelling recommendation

The remaining range is calculated and service stations along the route are displayed.



Even with the most up-to-date navigation data, information about individual points of interest may have changed. Filling stations might have closed, for example.

- "Navigation"
- "Route profile"
- "Recommended refuel"
A list of service stations is displayed.
- Select a service station.
- Select the  symbol.
- "Start guidance": starts route guidance to the selected service station.
"Add as another destination": the service station is added to the route.

Route guidance by spoken instructions


Switching spoken instructions on/off

Voice instructions can be switched on/off during route guidance.

- "Navigation"
- "Map"
-   "Spoken instructions"

For rapid access, it is a good idea to save items on a favourite button, see page 22.

Repeating spoken instruction

- "Navigation"
- "Map"
- Select the  symbol.
- Press the controller twice.

Adjusting volume for spoken instructions

The volume can be adjusted only while a voice instruction is being issued.

- Have the last spoken instruction repeated if desired.
- Turn the knob during the spoken instruction until the desired volume is obtained.



The setting is memorised for the remote control currently in use.

Map view

Displaying map view

1. "Navigation"
2. "Map"

Overview



- 1 Symbol bar
- 2 Section of route with traffic obstruction
- 3 Road sign for traffic obstruction
- 4 Planned route
- 5 Current position
- 6 Upper status box
- 7 Lower status box

Lines on the map

Roads and transport routes are displayed in different colours and line formats dependent upon type. Railway links and ferry routes are represented by dashed lines. National borders are represented by thin lines.

Traffic obstructions

Small triangles along a planned route indicate sections of the route with traffic obstructions, sized in accordance with the map scale. The direction in which the triangles are pointing corresponds to the direction of the obstruction.

Road signs provide information about the nature of the obstruction(s).

- ▷ Red road sign: the obstruction affects the planned route or direction of travel.

- ▷ Grey road sign: the obstruction does not affect the planned route or direction of travel.

Traffic information, see page 151.

Planned route

Once route guidance has started, the planned route is displayed on the map.

Status boxes

Show/hide: press controller.

- ▷ Upper status box: time of day, phone information and entertainment details
- ▷ Lower status box: symbol for active route guidance, traffic information status, arrival time and distance to destination

Symbol bar


The following functions are available directly in the map view:

Symbol	Function
	Starting/ending route guidance
	Switching spoken instructions on/off
	Changing route criteria or selecting a route alternative
	Points of interest
	Displaying traffic information
	Interactive map
	Adjusting map view
	Changing the scale

Changing the map section

- ▷ "Interactive map"
 - ▷ Move the map: tilt the controller in the corresponding direction.
 - ▷ Move the map diagonally: tilt the controller in the corresponding direction and turn it.

Changing the scale

1. Select the  symbol.
2. Turn the controller to change the scale.

Automatically set scale

In the north-facing map view, turn the controller any direction until the scale indicator shows 'AUTO'.

The map scale is selected in such a way that the current position and destination are shown on the map.

Settings for map view

The map is displayed on the control display.

1. Call up "Options".
2. "Settings"

Set the optimised map view.

- ▷ "Day/night mode"
Select according to lighting conditions and make settings.
"Traffic situation/grey map" active:
Setting is ignored.
- ▷ With Professional navigation system:
"Satellite images"
Depending on availability and resolution, satellite images are shown scaled to between 2 km and 1000 km, approx. 1 mile and 600 miles.
- ▷ With Professional navigation system:
"Perspective view in 3D"
Shows a 3D view. Distinctive locations in the navigation data are shown on the map in 3D.
- ▷ "Traffic situation/grey map"
The map is optimised for the display of traffic information. Symbols for points of interest are no longer displayed.
- ▷ With Professional navigation system:
"Weather"
When route guidance is active, weather symbols are displayed on the map.
Symbols for the following are displayed:
cloudless, cloudy, rain, storm and snowfall,

with maximum and minimum temperatures in each case.

The information is updated whenever route guidance is started or resumed, or if the destination changes.

The symbols are displayed in a number of selected scales.

With navigation system Business: Arrow view

An arrow view is shown on the map.

1. Call up "Options".
2. "Arrow view on map"

With Professional navigation system: Map view for split screen


For the split screen, the map view can be selected independently of the main screen.

1. Call up "Options".
2. "Split screen"
3. Tilt the controller repeatedly to the right until the split screen content is selected.
4. Select "Split screen display" or scale.
5. Select the map view:
 - ▷ "Arrow view"
 - ▷ "Map north-oriented"
 - ▷ "Map indicating dir. of travel"
 - ▷ "Map perspective"
 - ▷ "Position"
 - ▷ "3D exit roads"
 - ▷ "Traffic situation/grey map"
6. Change the scale: go to the split screen and turn the controller.

With Professional navigation system: displaying photographs of the destination

When route guidance is active, photographs can be displayed for some destinations.


1. "Navigation"
2. "Map"

3.  "Guidance"
4. "Pictures at destination"
5. The photographs available for selection vary dependent upon equipment.

Traffic information

Overview

- ▷ You can have traffic information displayed from radio stations that broadcast information from a TMC, Traffic Message Channel, a traffic information service: information about traffic obstructions and hazards is updated continuously.
- ▷ Traffic information is represented by symbols on the map.
- ▷ Traffic information for the surrounding area is saved in a list.

 The symbol on the map view symbol bar turns red if traffic information affects the calculated route.


Traffic information via BMW Assist

In some countries, BMW Assist transmits Real Time Traffic Information, RTTI.

If you have a valid BMW Assist contract, traffic information from BMW Assist will be displayed instead of traffic information from the radio station.

In countries where BMW Assist does not transmit traffic information, radio stations continue to be displayed.

The traffic information from BMW Assist enables traffic obstructions to be located more precisely. Unobstructed routes within a radius of approx. 100 km, approx. 60 miles, of the current position are also displayed more accurately.



 The symbol in the map view symbol bar turns yellow if traffic information affects the calculated route and the estimated delay is less than 20 minutes. The symbol turns red if the estimated delay is more than 20 minutes or the route is closed.

"Traffic situation/grey map": information about traffic flow, e.g. stationary or stop-and-go traffic, is only displayed with the map view in this setting, see page 152. The preview map in the list of traffic information also shows this setting.

Switching reception on/off

1. "Navigation"
2. Call up "Options".
3. "Receive traffic info"

Calling up traffic information

1. "Navigation"
2. "Map"
3.  "Traffic information"
The traffic information for the calculated route is displayed first.
Traffic information is sorted by distance from the current vehicle position.
4. Select traffic information.
 "More information":
Displays more information.
5. Scroll to the next or previous item of traffic information, if applicable.

Traffic information on the map

"Traffic situation/grey map" active: the information shown on the control display is switched over to greyscales. This provides the best possible conditions for displaying traffic information. In this setting no account is taken of day/night mode. Symbols or points of interest are not displayed.

1. "Navigation"
2. "Map"
3. Call up "Options".
4. "Settings"
5. "Traffic situation/grey map"

Symbols in the map view

The symbols for traffic obstructions are displayed as appropriate for the scale of the map

and the location of the traffic obstruction in relation to the route.

Additional information in the map view

The length, direction and effect of a traffic obstruction is displayed in the appropriate scale in the form of traffic symbols on the map or bars along the calculated route.

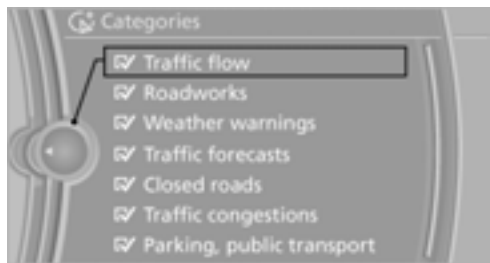
- ▷ Red: congestion
- ▷ Orange: stop-and-go traffic
- ▷ Yellow: heavy traffic
- ▷ Green: clear road
- ▷ Grey: general traffic information, e.g. roadworks

The information displayed is determined by the relevant traffic information service.

Filtering traffic information

Set the traffic information displayed on the map.

1. "Navigation"
2. "Map"
3. Call up "Options".
4. "Traffic info categories"
5. Select desired categories.



Traffic information for the selected categories is displayed on the map.

- ▷ Traffic information on the route is always faded in.
- ▷ For your safety, traffic information indicating a potential hazard cannot be faded out.

Route guidance with traffic information

Semi-dynamic route guidance

Switching on reception of traffic information activates semi-dynamic route guidance.

The system takes the available traffic information into account during route guidance. A message is displayed based upon the route, the traffic information and possible diversion routes. If there is a traffic obstruction, a diversion is offered if possible.

The top part of the message contains the following information:

- ▷ Symbol representing the first traffic obstruction, possibly with distance to start of traffic obstruction
- ▷ Total length of traffic obstructions on the route
- ▷ How long the traffic obstructions will delay your journey by

The bottom part of the message contains the following information:

- ▷ Recommended diversion with distance to start of diversion
- ▷ Comparison of length of new route with length of original route
- ▷ Time gained by taking the diversion compared with following the original route with the traffic obstructions

With Professional navigation system: both the original route in white and the diversion are displayed on the split screen.


Accepting the alternative route:

- ⚡ "Detour"

In the case of specific hazards such as objects on the road, a message is displayed without suggesting an alternative route.

Alternative routes can also be accepted if traffic information is called up from the list:

1. "Navigation"
2. "Map"
3. 🚧 "Traffic information"

4. "Detour information"
5.  "Detour"

Dynamic route guidance

The route is automatically changed if a traffic obstruction is encountered.

- ▷ The system does not alert you to traffic obstructions on the original route.
- ▷ Traffic information continues to be displayed on the map.
- ▷ Depending on the type of road and the nature and length of the traffic congestion, the route can also be calculated in such a way that it cuts across the traffic congestion.
- ▷ Specific hazards are displayed regardless of the setting.

Activating dynamic route guidance:

1. "Navigation"
2. Call up "Options".
3. "Dynamic guidance"

With Professional navigation system: Country-specific information via BMW Online

Country-specific information, such as speed limits on B roads, can be transferred via BMW Online, see page 217.

1. "Navigation"
2. Call up "Options".
3. "Country info (BMW Online)"

What to do if ...

Vehicle equipment

This chapter describes all standard equipment, national market versions and optional equipment featured in the series. Therefore, it also makes reference to equipment which might not be available in a vehicle due to the optional accessories selected or national market versions, for example. This also applies for safety-relevant functions and systems.

- ▷ Spoken instructions cease to be given immediately before junctions during route guidance?
Area not fully recorded, or you have deviated from the proposed route and the system requires a few seconds to calculate a new route.

What to do if ...

- ▷ The current position cannot be displayed?
The vehicle is in an area not covered by the data, is in a poor-reception area or the system is currently calculating the position. Reception will normally be possible outdoors.
- ▷ A destination without a street is not transferred to the route guidance system?
No city centre can be determined for the town/city entered. Enter any street in the town/city selected and start route guidance.
- ▷ A destination is not transferred to the route guidance system?
The data for the destination are not available in the navigation data. Choose a destination as close as possible to the original one.
- ▷ The letters to spell a destination cannot be selected for destination input?
The data available does not include the data for the destination. Choose a destination as close as possible to the original one.
- ▷ The map is displayed in greyscales?
"Traffic situation/grey map" active: the information shown on the control display is switched over to greyscales. This provides the best possible conditions for displaying traffic information.



Entertainment

This chapter tells you how to operate the radio, CD and external audio devices and how to adjust the tone settings for these systems.

On/off and settings

Vehicle equipment

This chapter describes all standard equipment, national market versions and optional equipment featured in the series. Therefore, it also makes reference to equipment which might not be available in a vehicle due to the optional accessories selected or national market versions, for example. This also applies for safety-relevant functions and systems.

General guidance

The following audio and video sources share the same controls and adjustment features:

- ▷ Radio
- ▷ CD/DVD player
- ▷ Video
- ▷ External devices, e.g. MP3 player



Controls

The audio and video sources can be operated via:

- ▷ Buttons near the CD/DVD player
- ▷ iDrive
- ▷ Buttons on the steering wheel, see page 11
- ▷ Favourites buttons, see page 22
- ▷ Voice control system

Buttons near the CD/DVD player




- 1 Audio output for entertainment systems on/off, volume
 - ▷ Press: switching on/off
Upon switching on, the radio station last tuned or the track last played is called up.
 - ▷ Turn: adjusting the volume
- 2  Eject CD/DVD
- 3 Drive for CD/DVD
- 4  Station/track search
 - ▷ Changing radio stations
 - ▷ Select track for CD/DVD player and certain multimedia devices

Switching on/off

To switch audio output for entertainment systems on/off:

Press knob **1** next to the CD/DVD player.

 This symbol on the control display indicates that the audio output has been switched off.

Sound output remains available for approx. 20 minutes after the ignition has been switched off. All you have to do is switch audio output back on.

Adjusting the volume

Turn knob **1** next to the CD/DVD player until the desired volume is obtained.

You can also adjust the volume with buttons on the steering wheel, see page 11.

Tone settings

You can alter various tone settings, e.g. treble and bass or the speed-dependent volume increase.

The tone settings are applied to all audio sources.

The settings are saved for the remote control currently in use.

Treble, bass, balance, fader

- ▷ "Treble": high tone setting.
- ▷ "Bass": deep tone setting.
- ▷ "Balance": left/right volume distribution
- ▷ "Fader": front/rear volume distribution

Adjusting

1. "CD/Multimedia", "Radio" or "Settings".
2. "Tone"



3. Select the desired tone setting.



4. Adjusting: turn the controller.
5. Memorising: press controller.

Equaliser

You can adjust individual audio frequency ranges.

1. "CD/Multimedia", "Radio" or "Settings".
2. "Tone"

3. "Equaliser"
4. Select the desired setting.

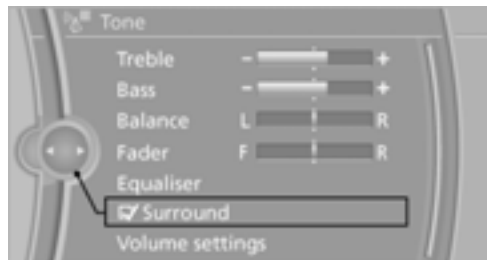


5. Adjusting: turn the controller.
6. Memorising: press controller.

Multichannel playback, surround

You can choose between stereo and multichannel playback, surround sound.

1. "CD/Multimedia", "Radio" or "Settings".
2. "Tone"
3. "Surround"



With surround sound activated, multichannel playback is simulated when playing an audio track in stereo.

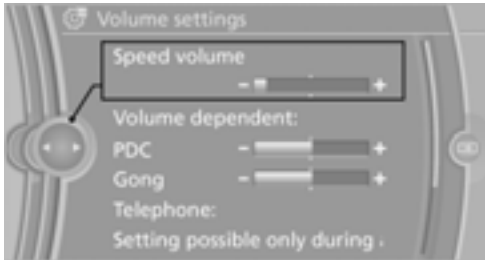
Volumes

- ▷ "Speed volume": adaptation of the volume depending on the speed
- ▷ "PDC": volume of the PDC sound signal in relation to the sound output from the entertainment system
- ▷ "Gong": volume of the sound signal, e.g. for seat belt reminder, in relation to the sound output from the entertainment system

- ▷ If applicable, "Microphone": volume of the microphone during a phone call
- ▷ If applicable, "Loudspeak.": volume of the loudspeaker during a phone call

Adjusting

1. "CD/Multimedia", "Radio" or "Settings".
2. "Tone"
3. "Volume settings"
4. Select the desired volume setting.



5. Adjusting: turn the controller.
6. Memorising: press controller.

Resetting the tone settings

You can reset all tone settings to the default setting.

1. "CD/Multimedia", "Radio" or "Settings".
2. "Tone"
3. "Reset"

Radio

Vehicle equipment

This chapter describes all standard equipment, national market versions and optional equipment featured in the series. Therefore, it also makes reference to equipment which might not be available in a vehicle due to the optional accessories selected or national market versions, for example. This also applies for safety-relevant functions and systems.

General guidance

Your radio is designed to receive the following stations:

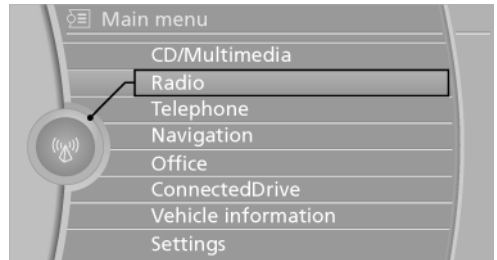
- ▷ FM: stations on the VHF wave range
- ▷ AM: stations in the MW and SW wave ranges
- ▷ DAB: digitally transmitted stations, see page 165

Selecting a station



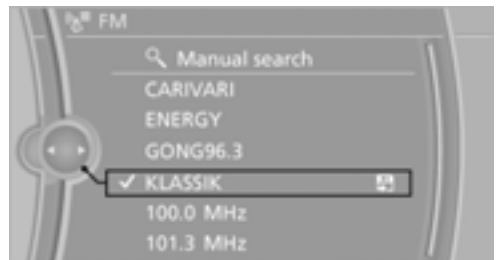
Press the knob if audio output is switched off.

1. "Radio"



2. "FM" or "AM"

3. Select the desired station.




The selected station is saved for the remote control currently in use.

Changing stations

Turn and press the controller

or

Press the  button for the corresponding direction

or

Press the buttons on the steering wheel, see page 11.

Selecting stations manually

Selecting a station using the frequency.

1. "Radio"

2. "FM" or "AM"

3. "Manual search"

- In the "AM" wave range, select either "MW" or "SW" as applicable.
- To select the frequency: turn the controller.



To memorise a station: press and hold down the controller.

Renaming a station

An FM station with a station name that changes can be renamed.

- "Radio"
- "FM"
- Select the desired station.
- Call up "Options".
- "Rename as:"

If necessary, wait for the required name to be displayed.

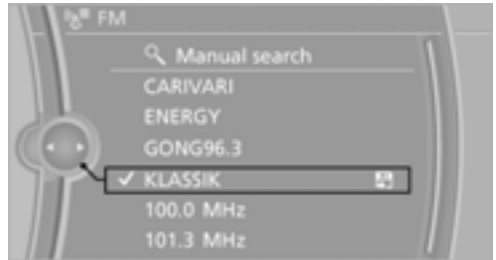
The selected station name is added to the list of current stations and memorised stations.

Memorising stations

Via iDrive

- "Radio"
- "FM" or "AM"

- Select the desired station.




- Press and hold down the controller.
- Select the desired memory location.

The stations are saved for the remote control currently in use.

Via favourites buttons

You can also store a station on the favourites buttons, see page 22.

- Select station.
-  Press and hold down the required button.

Radio Data System RDS

Additional information is transmitted using RDS in the FM wave range. RDS stations therefore offer the following features:

- ▷ Where a radio station is broadcast on several frequencies, the set automatically switches to whichever frequency offers the best reception.
- ▷ Where reception conditions are good, the names of stations are displayed on the control display. Where reception is poor or in the event of interference, it may take some time before the station names will appear in the display.

Switching RDS on/off

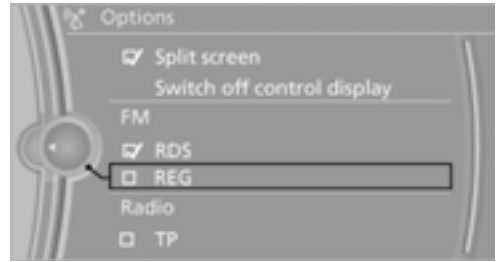
- "Radio"
- "FM"
- Call up "Options".

4. "RDS"



The setting is memorised for the remote control currently in use.

4. "REG"



The setting is saved for the remote control currently in use.

Regional programmes

Certain FM stations broadcast regional programmes at certain times of day. The following settings are possible:

▷ REG function on:

Recommended setting. The set regional programme is retained for as long as possible. Reception quality may deteriorate when you go beyond its transmission area. With poor reception quality over a longer period of time, a switch is made to a regional programme with better reception.

▷ REG function off:

When you leave the transmission area for the regional station that is tuned, the radio changes over to a new regional station if available. When in an area with two or more regional stations, the radio may switch to and fro between the stations. If this happens, switch on the REG function.

Switching REG function on/off

1. "Radio"
2. "FM"
3. Call up "Options".

Traffic reports, TP

You can even continue to receive traffic reports whilst listening to a CD. For this, the TP function, Traffic Programme, must be switched on.

The navigation system's spoken instructions are not interrupted by traffic reports.

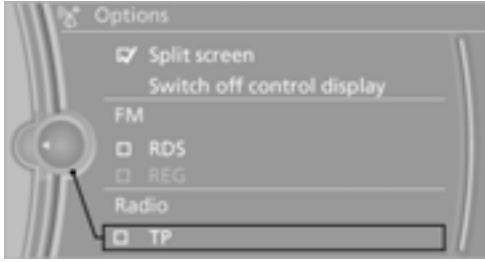
Displays

- ▷ TP white: traffic reports switched on, traffic reports station available.
- ▷ TP grey: traffic reports switched on, no traffic reports station available.
- ▷ No display: traffic reports switched off.

Switching the Traffic Programme on/off


1. "Radio"
2. "FM"
3. Call up "Options".

4. "TP"



You can also store the TP function on the favourites buttons, see page 22.

Interrupt the traffic report

Press the  button during the traffic report.

Adjusting the volume of traffic reports

Turn the volume knob during the traffic report until you have set the desired volume.

This volume is retained for subsequent traffic reports. If other audio or video sources are set louder than the traffic reports, the volume of a report is increased correspondingly.

Memorised stations

40 stations can be memorised.

Calling up a station

1. "Radio"
2. "Saved stations"
3. Select the desired station.

Memorising stations

The currently selected station is memorised.

1. "Radio"
2. "Saved stations"

3. "Save station"



4. Select the desired memory location.

The list of memorised stations is stored for the remote control currently in use.

You can also store the stations on the favourites buttons, see page 22.

Deleting a station

1. "Radio"
2. "Saved stations"
3. Select the desired station.
4. Call up "Options".
5. "Delete entry"

Digital radio DAB, DAB/DMB

Vehicle equipment

This chapter describes all standard equipment, national market versions and optional equipment featured in the series. Therefore, it also makes reference to equipment which might not be available in a vehicle due to the optional accessories selected or national market versions, for example. This also applies for safety-relevant functions and systems.

General guidance

Digital radio provides you with additional stations that are transmitted with a high sound quality. A digital radio network must be available in order to receive digital stations.

Several stations are combined to form a group. Each station can transmit additional information such as weather reports, for example, or the name of the artist performing the current music track.

Some stations feature additional programmes; sports stations can transmit different sports events simultaneously, for instance. You then have the option of choosing a particular sports event.

Station search

The most of stations received may not be automatically updated. To update the display, start the station search manually.

1. "Radio"
2. "DAB/DMB"
3. Select "All ensembles" as appropriate.
4. "Station search"

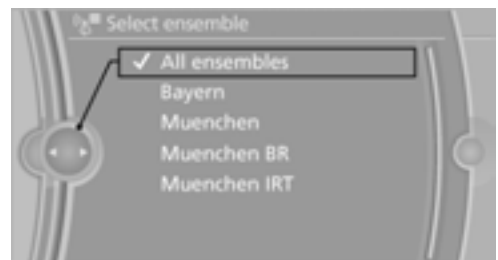
Aborting station search

Any stations you have stored can be called up via:

- ▷ Favourites buttons
- ▷ "Saved stations"

Selecting station

1. "Radio"
2. "DAB/DMB"
3. If applicable, select "All ensembles" or the desired group.



4. Select the desired station.



Changing stations

Press the  button.

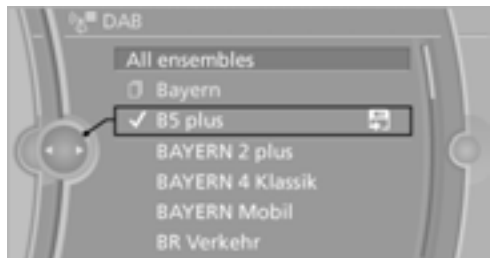
Changing the group

You can only change the group if you have selected "All ensembles".

Press the  button for longer.

Memorising stations

1. "Radio"
2. "DAB/DMB"
3. Select the desired station.



4. Press the controller again.
5. Select the desired memory location.

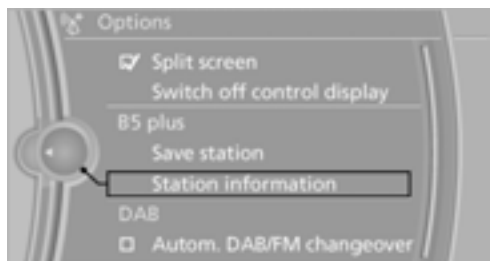
The stations are saved for the remote control currently in use.

You can also store the stations on the favourites buttons, see page 22.

Displaying additional information

Depending on a station's offer, additional information can be displayed, such as weather reports or the name of the artist for the current music track.

1. "Radio"
2. "DAB/DMB"
3. Select the desired station.
4. Call up "Options".
5. "Station information"



Automatic DAB/FM switchover

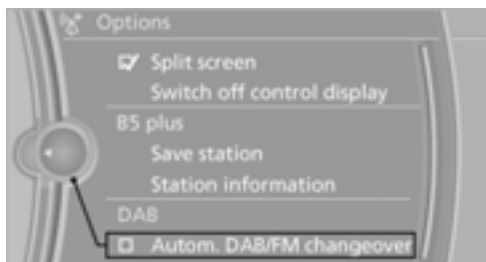
With DAB/FM changeover activated, the set automatically switches to a new station when the previous one can no longer be received.


The set will search for the station in another group or look for the station's analogue frequency.


Automatic changeover is only possible if the corresponding station is available in sufficient quality and if the station's IDs match.

Switching on automatic DAB/FM changeover

1. "Radio"
2. "DAB/DMB"
3. Call up "Options".
4. "Autom. DAB/FM changeover"




The  symbol next to the station name indicates that the analogue version of a digital station is being played.

The  symbol next to the station name indicates that the digital version of a digital station is being played in another group.

The setting is saved for the remote control currently in use.

Additional programmes

 This symbol is shown if a selected station offers additional programmes. Sports stations, for example, may broadcast different sports

events at the same time. You then have the option of choosing a particular sports event.

1. "Radio"
2. "DAB/DMB"
3. Select the desired station.
4. Press controller.
5. Select the additional programme.

CD/DVD player

Vehicle equipment

This chapter describes all standard equipment, national market versions and optional equipment featured in the series. Therefore, it also makes reference to equipment which might not be available in a vehicle due to the optional accessories selected or national market versions, for example. This also applies for safety-relevant functions and systems.

CD/DVD playback



Inserting a CD/DVD

Insert the CD/DVD into the drive with the label side up. The CD/DVD slides in automatically. The CD starts to play automatically if sound output is switched on. When playing CDs/DVDs with compressed audio files, it can take the CD player a few minutes to read in the data, depending on the directory structure.

Formats that can be played

CD/DVD player

- ▷ DVD: DVD-ROM, DVD-R, DVD+R, DVD-RW, DVD+RW, DVD-R DL, DVD+R DL, DVD-Audio (only video system), DVD-Video
- ▷ CD: CD-ROM, CD-R, CD-RW, CD-DA
- ▷ Compressed audio files: MP3, WMA, AAC, M4A

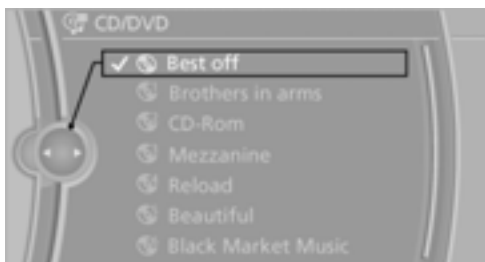
CD player


- ▷ CD: CD-ROM, CD-R, CD-RW, CD-DA

Starting playback


A CD/DVD is already in the CD/DVD player.

1. "CD/Multimedia"
2. "CD/DVD"
3. Selecting the desired CD or DVD:




Symbol	Meaning
	CD/DVD player

Eject CD/DVD

Press the  button beside the CD/DVD player. The CD/DVD is partially ejected out of the drive.

Playing audio tracks

Track selection using the button

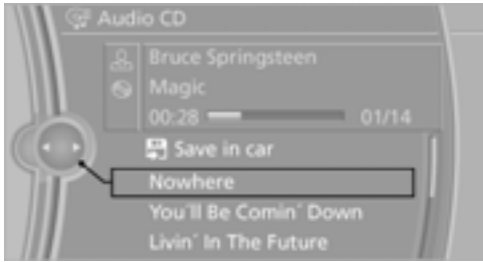
Press the  button for the appropriate direction repeatedly until the desired track is reached.

Track selection via iDrive

Audio CDs

1. "CD/Multimedia"
2. "CD/DVD"
3. Select the desired CD or DVD.

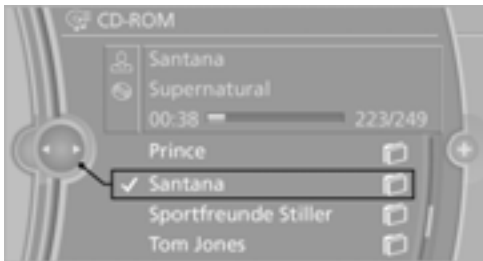
4. Select the desired track to start playback.



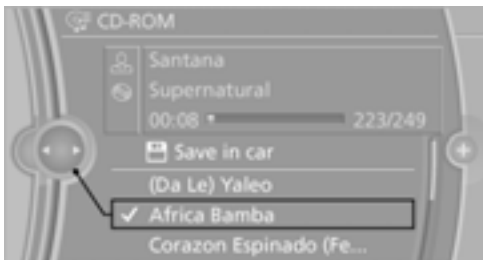
CDs/DVDs with compressed audio files

Depending on the data, certain characters may not be displayed correctly on the CD/DVD.

1. "CD/Multimedia"
2. "CD/DVD"
3. Select the desired CD or DVD.
4. Select the directory as appropriate.
To change to a higher-level directory: tilt the controller to the left.

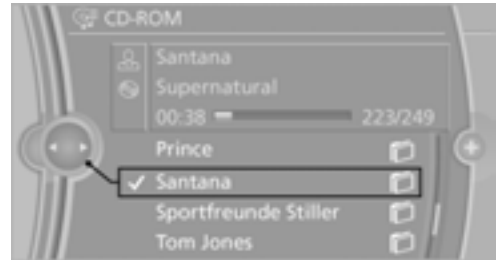


5. Select a track and press the controller.



Displaying information on the track

If information is stored for a track, this is displayed automatically:

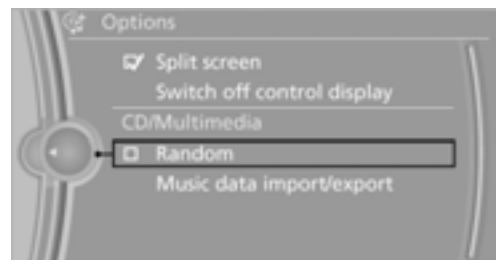


- ▷ Artist
- ▷ Album title
- ▷ Number of tracks on the CD/DVD
- ▷ File name of the track

Random

The tracks on the current CD/DVD are played once each in random order.

1. "CD/Multimedia"
2. "CD/DVD"
3. Select the desired CD or DVD.
4. Call up "Options".
5. "Random"



CDs/DVDs with compressed audio files: all tracks in the selected directory are played back in random order.

Random playback is switched off when the audio source is changed or the ignition is switched off.

Fast forward/reverse

Press and hold the  button for the appropriate direction.

Video playback

Country codes

Only DVDs with the code of your home region can be played, see also the information on your DVD.

Code	Region
1	USA, Canada
2	Japan, Europe, Middle East, South Africa
3	South-East Asia
4	Australia, Central and South America, New Zealand
5	North-West Asia, North Africa
6	China
0	All regions

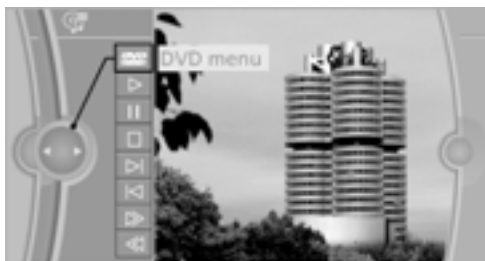
Starting playback

For your own safety, the video image is only displayed up to approx. 3 km/h, approx. 2 mph. On some national-market versions, it is only displayed when the handbrake is applied or P is engaged.

DVD video


1. "CD/Multimedia"
2. "CD/DVD"
3. Select a DVD with video content.

4.  "DVD menu"



5. Start the DVD via the DVD menu.

VCD/SVCD

1. "CD/Multimedia"
2. "CD/DVD"
3. Select a CD/DVD with video content.
4.  "Select track"
5. Select the desired title.









The CD/DVD is started.

Video menu

To open the Video menu:

1. Turn the controller while the DVD is playing.
2. When "Back" is displayed, press the controller.

The Video menu is displayed:

Symbol	Function
	Calling up the DVD menu
	Starting playback
	Pause
	Stop
	Next chapter/next track
	Previous chapter/previous track
	Fast forward
	Rewind

With fast forward/rewind: each time the controller is pressed, the speed increases. To stop, start playback.

DVD menu

1. If necessary, turn the controller to call up the Video menu.
 2. **DVD** "DVD menu"
The DVD menu is displayed. The display depends on the contents of the DVD.
- ▷ To select menu items: tilt and press the controller.
 - ▷ To change to the Video menu: turn the controller and select "Back".

Settings for DVD/VCD

For some DVDs, settings are only possible via the DVD menu, see also information on your DVD.

Language

1. Turn the controller while the DVD is playing.
2. Call up "Options".
3. "Audio/language"



4. Select the desired language.
The languages available depend on the DVD.

Subtitle

Subtitles can be selected if the DVD includes this feature.

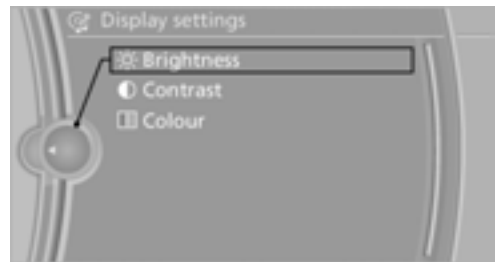
1. Turn the controller while the DVD is playing.
2. Call up "Options".
3. "Subtitles"

4. Select the language you require or "Do not display subtitles".



Brightness, contrast, colour

1. Turn the controller while the DVD is playing.
2. Call up "Options".
3. "Display settings"
4. "Brightness", "Contrast" or "Colour"



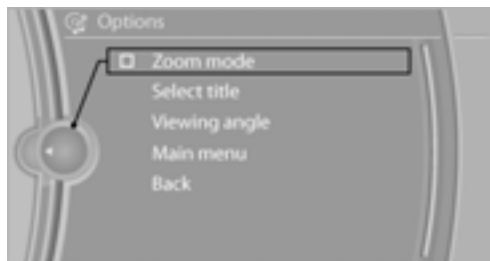
5. Turn the controller until the desired setting is reached and press the controller.

Zoom

Display video picture over full screen.

1. Turn the controller while the DVD is playing.
2. Call up "Options".
3. "Other options"

4. "Zoom mode"




Selecting a track

DVD video:

1. When you see the DVD menu on the display, turn the controller.
2. Call up "Options".
3. "Other options"
4. "Select title"
5. Select the desired track.

VCD/SVCD:

1.  "Select track"
2. Select the desired title.

Camera angles

The camera angles depend on the DVD.

1. Turn the controller while the DVD is playing.
2. Call up "Options".
3. "Other options"
4. "Viewing angle"
5. Select the desired angle of view.

Calling up the main menu, Back

These functions are not included on every DVD. It may not be possible to run these functions.

Notes



BMW CD/DVD players are officially designated Class 1 Laser products. Do not operate with damaged cover, as otherwise eye injuries can be caused.

Do not use CDs/DVDs with adhesive labels that have been affixed subsequently, as these may peel off while in the drive as a result of the temperatures to which CDs are exposed during playing, and could damage the system irreparably.

Use only round CDs/DVDs with a standard diameter of 12 cm, approx. 5 in, and do not use CDs/DVDs in conjunction with adapters, e.g. CD singles. Otherwise the CDs or the adapter could jam and may be impossible to eject. Do not use combined CD/DVDs, e.g. DVD^{Plus}, otherwise the CD/DVD could jam and be impossible to eject. ◀

General faults

The BMW CD/DVD players have been optimised for use in the vehicle. In some instances, they may be more sensitive to faulty CDs/DVDs than devices for stationary use.

If a CD/DVD cannot be played, first check whether it has been inserted properly.

Humidity

A high level of humidity may cause the laser beam focusing lens to fog over and temporarily prevent the CD/DVD from being played.

Malfunctions with individual CDs/DVDs

Should malfunctions occur only with individual CDs/DVDs, one of the following factors may be the cause:

Self-recorded CDs/DVDs

With self-recorded CDs/DVDs, possible causes for output malfunctions are, e.g., an inconsistent data-creation or burning process, or low quality or high age of the CD/DVD blank.

Only label CDs/DVDs on the top with a pen designed for this purpose.

Damage

Avoid fingerprints, as well as dust, scratches and moisture.

Store CDs/DVDs in a protective cover.

Do not expose CDs/DVDs to temperatures above 50 °C/122 °F, high levels of humidity or direct sunlight.


CDs/DVDs with copy protection

CDs/DVDs are often copy-protected by the manufacturer. This could result in CDs/DVDs being impossible to play, or only playable with restrictions.

MACROVISION

This product contains copyrighted technology based on a number of registered U.S. patents and intellectual property of the Macrovision Corporation and other manufacturers. The use of this copy protection must be approved by Macrovision. Media with the corresponding protection – unless otherwise agreed with Macrovision – may only be shown privately. It is prohibited to copy this technology.

DTS Digital Surround™

 Manufactured under licence under US patent numbers: 5,451,942; 5,956,674; 5,974,380; 5,978,762; 6,487,535 & other US and worldwide patents issued and pending. DTS and the logo are registered trademarks & DTS Digital Surround and the DTS logos are trademarks of DTS Inc. © DTS, Inc. All rights reserved.

Music collection

Vehicle equipment


This chapter describes all standard equipment, national market versions and optional equipment featured in the series. Therefore, it also makes reference to equipment which might not be available in a vehicle due to the optional accessories selected or national market versions, for example. This also applies for safety-relevant functions and systems.


Music memory

Tracks from CDs and DVDs and USB media can be memorised in and played from the music collection in the vehicle.

- ▷ Audio CD: tracks are converted into a compressed audio format on storage. If applicable, information on the album, e.g. the artist, is stored.
- ▷ CD/DVD or USB medium with compressed audio files: the entire content of the CD/DVD or USB medium is stored as an album in the vehicle. After memorising, tracks and directories can be deleted individually. Only the formats WMA, MP3, M4A and AAC are stored.

Tracks with copy protection, DRM, are stored in the vehicle, but cannot be played.

 Back up music data regularly, as otherwise it could be lost in the event of a fault in the hard disk. ◀

 Music recognition technology and related data are provided by Gracenote®. Gracenote® is the industry standard in music recognition technology and related content delivery. For more information, please visit www.gracenote.com.


CD and music-related data from Gracenote, Inc., copyright © 2000-2009 Gracenote. Gracenote Software, copyright © 2000-2009

Gracenote. This product and service may practice one or more of the following U.S. Patents: 5.987.525, 6.061.680, 6.154.773, 6.161.132, 6.230.192, 6.230.207, 6.240.459 and 6.330.593 as well as other patents issued or pending. Some services supplied under license from Open Globe, Inc. for U.S. Patent: 6.304.523.

Gracenote and CDDB are registered trademarks of Gracenote. The Gracenote logo and logotype, and the "powered by Gracenote" logo are trademarks of Gracenote.

Memorising from CDs/DVDs

It is only possible to memorise CDs/DVDs from the CD/DVD player.

1. Insert a CD/DVD in the CD/DVD player.
2. "CD/Multimedia"
3. "CD/DVD"
4. Select the  symbol for the CD/DVD player.
5. "Save in car"



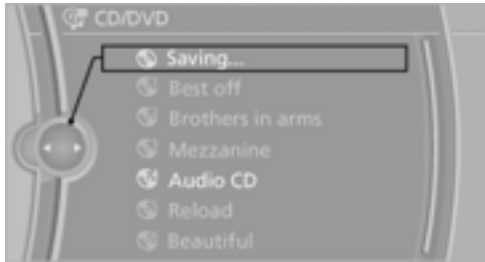
The music collection is displayed. The tracks are memorised and played in sequence from the music collection.

During memorising, bear the following in mind: Do not switch back to the CD/DVD player and do not remove the CD/DVD from the CD/DVD player, as otherwise memorising is interrupted. It is possible to change over to the other audio sources without interrupting memorising.

Tracks of the current CD/DVD that have already been memorised can also be called up.

Interrupting memorising


1. "CD/Multimedia"
2. "CD/DVD"
3. "Saving..."



4. "Cancel saving"

The memorising process is interrupted and can be continued at any time.

Resuming memorising

1. "CD/Multimedia"
2. "CD/DVD"
3. Select the  symbol for the CD/DVD player.
4. "Continue saving"

Memorising of the CD/DVD resumes at the start of the track at which memorising was interrupted.

Information on the album

During the memorising process, the information, e.g. the name of the artist, is stored for the tracks if this information is available in the database in the vehicle or on the CD.

To update the database, contact your Service Centre.

If no information is stored for the tracks, you can update the entire album information for the CD via BMW Online if necessary, see page 178.

Memorising from a USB medium

To save music, a suitable medium must be connected to the USB interface in the glove box.

- ▷ Suitable media: USB mass storage facilities, e.g. USB memory sticks or MP3 players with USB interface.
- ▷ Unsuitable media: USB hard disks, USB hubs, USB memory card readers with a number of bays, Apple iPod/iPhone. Music from an Apple iPod/iPhone can be played back via the USB audio interface in the centre armrest.
- ▷ File systems: common file systems for USB devices are supported. The FAT 32 format is recommended.



It is only possible to memorise tracks from a USB medium via the USB interface in the glove box. ◀

1. Connect the USB medium to the USB interface in the glove box.
2. "CD/Multimedia"
3. "Music collection"
4. Call up "Options".
5. "Music data import/export"
6. "Import music (USB)"

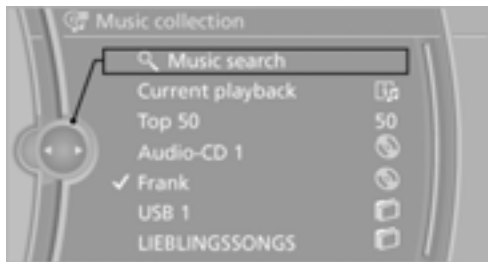


Playing music

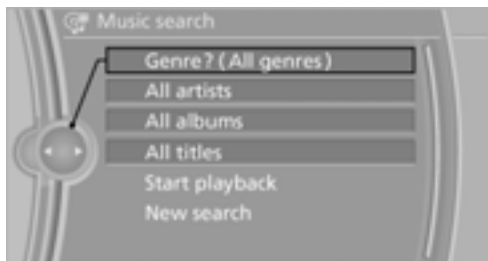
Music search

All tracks for which information is stored can be called up via music search. All tracks for which no information is stored can be called up via the corresponding album.

1. "CD/Multimedia"
2. "Music collection"
3. "Music search"



4. Select the desired category.



5. Select the desired entry:
 - ▷ Call up "A-Z search" and make the desired entry.
 or
 - ▷ Select the desired entry from the list.
6. Select further categories as appropriate. The tracks found are listed in alphabetical order. Not all categories need to be selected. If, for example, you wish to find all the tracks of a certain artist, call up only this artist. All tracks by that artist will be displayed.

7. "Start playback"


The list of tracks is repeated automatically.

Starting new music search

"New search"

Music search using voice control

Instructions for the voice control system, see page 24.

1. Press the  button on the steering wheel.
2. ›Music search‹
3. Call up the desired category, e.g. ›Select artist‹.
4. Say the desired entry from the list.
5. Select further categories as appropriate.

Selecting a track directly:

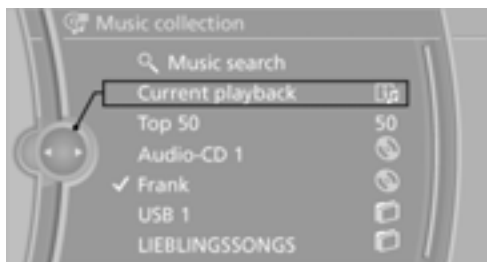
1.  ›Title ...‹

Say the voice command and the name of the desired track in one command.

Currently playing

The last list of tracks generated by the music search or the last album selected.

1. "CD/Multimedia"
2. "Music collection"
3. "Current playback"



4. If applicable, select the desired track.



Top 50

List of the 50 most frequently played tracks.

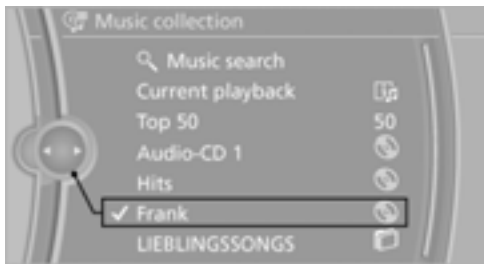
1. "CD/Multimedia"
2. "Music collection"
3. "Top 50"
4. If applicable, select the desired track.

Albums

All memorised albums, listed in the order of their date of memorising. Symbols indicate the format.

Symbol	Format
	Audio CD
	Compressed audio files

1. "CD/Multimedia"
2. "Music collection"
3. Select the desired album.



Depending on the album, the tracks or sub-directories of the album are displayed. If applicable, the first track is played automatically.

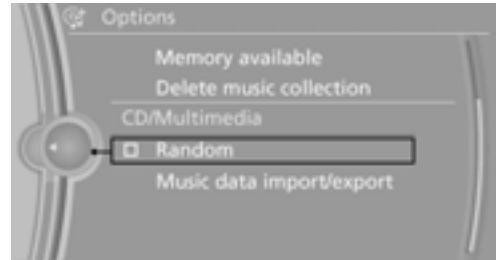
4. To select a track, change directories if necessary. Tilt the controller to the left to switch to a higher-level directory.

Random

All the tracks in the selection are played in random order.

1. "CD/Multimedia"
2. "Music collection"
3. Call up "Options".

4. "Random"



Managing music

Albums

Renaming album

If applicable, the name of the album is entered automatically during memorising. If the name is unknown, it can be changed later.

If a track from the album is currently being played, the album cannot be renamed.

1. "CD/Multimedia"
2. "Music collection"
3. Highlight the required album.
4. Call up "Options".
5. "Rename album"



6. Select the letters individually.

Deleting album

It may not be possible to delete an album while a track from it is being played.

1. "CD/Multimedia"
2. "Music collection"

3. Highlight the required album.
4. Call up "Options".
5. "Delete album"

Deleting track and directory

It may not be possible to delete a track while that track is being played.

It may not be possible to delete a directory while a track from it is being played.

1. "CD/Multimedia"
2. "Music collection"
3. Highlight the directory or track.
4. Call up "Options".
5. "Delete folder" or "Delete track".

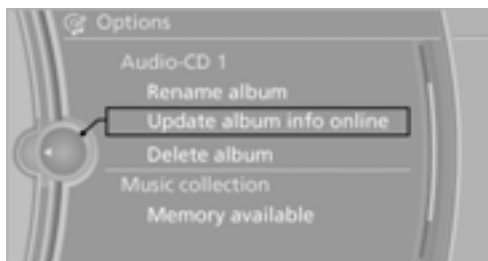
Album information

If no information was stored for audio CDs on memorising, it can be updated later via BMW Online if necessary.

Each album is updated separately.

Updating album information via BMW Online

1. "CD/Multimedia"
2. "Music collection"
3. Highlight the required album.
4. Call up "Options".
5. "Update album info online"



If memorising of the album information was possible, the name of the album is displayed.

Free capacity

Display free capacity in the music collection.

1. "CD/Multimedia"
2. "Music collection"
3. Call up "Options".
4. "Memory available"

Music collection

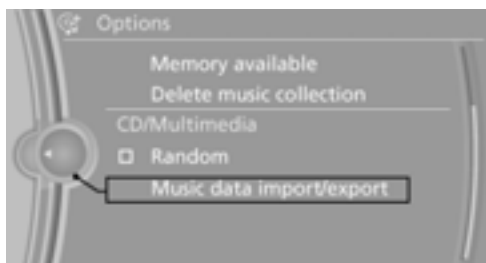
Backing up the music collection

The entire music collection can be backed up on a USB medium. Ensure that the USB medium has adequate free capacity.

Depending on the number of tracks, backing up the music collection can take several hours.

This is why it is best to make the backup during a longer journey.


1. Start the engine.
2. Insert a USB medium into the USB interface in the glove box; see page 112, for information about this connection.
3. "CD/Multimedia"
4. "Music collection"
5. Call up "Options".
6. "Music data import/export"



7. "Backup music on USB"



Restoring a music collection in the vehicle

 When music is memorised from a USB medium, the existing music collection in the vehicle is replaced. ◀

1. "CD/Multimedia"
2. "Music collection"
3. Call up "Options".
4. "Music data import/export"
5. "Restore music from USB"

Deleting music collection





1. "CD/Multimedia"
2. "Music collection"
3. Call up "Options".
4. "Delete music collection"

External devices

Vehicle equipment

This chapter describes all standard equipment, national market versions and optional equipment featured in the series. Therefore, it also makes reference to equipment which might not be available in a vehicle due to the optional accessories selected or national market versions, for example. This also applies for safety-relevant functions and systems.

Overview

Symbol	Meaning
	AUX-IN port
	USB audio interface
	Music interface for smartphones
	Bluetooth audio

AUX-IN port

Overview

- ▷ Audio devices such as MP3 players can be connected. Sound output is via the vehicle's loudspeaker system.
- ▷ Recommendation: medium sound and volume settings on the audio device. The sound might vary depending on the quality of the audio files.

Connecting

Lift up the centre armrest.




Connection for sound playback:

Jack plug 3.5 mm or 1/8 in

The AUX-In port is in the centre armrest

Insert the jack plug into the headphones port or the line-out port on the device.

Playback


1. Connect the audio device, switch it on and select a track via the audio device.
2. "CD/Multimedia"
3. If applicable, "External devices"
4.  "AUX front"

The sound is output via the vehicle loudspeakers.

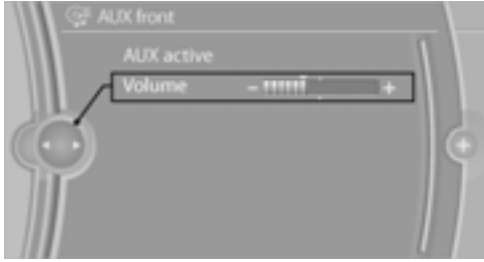
Volume control

The volume of the sound output depends on the audio device. If this volume deviates strongly from other audio sources, it makes sense to balance the volumes.

Adjusting the volume

1. "CD/Multimedia"
2. If applicable, "External devices"
3.  "AUX front"

4. "Volume"



- Turn the controller to set the required volume and press the controller.

USB audio interface / music interface for smartphones

Overview

External audio devices can be connected. Operation is possible via iDrive. Sound output is via the vehicle's loudspeaker system.

Connection options for external devices

- Connection via USB audio interface: Apple iPod/iPhone, USB devices, e.g. MP3 player, USB memory sticks or mobile phones that are supported by the USB audio interface.
- Connection using snap-in adapter if the vehicle is fitted with a music interface for smartphones: Apple iPhone or mobile phones. Playback might only be possible when the AUX-IN port is not in use.

The large number of audio devices available on the market means that the vehicle cannot guarantee to support the operation of all audio devices/mobile phones. Ask Service Centre about compatible audio devices/mobile phones.

File systems

Common file systems for USB devices are supported. The FAT 32 format is recommended.

Audio files

Standard format audio files can be played back:

- MP3
- WMA
- WAV (PCM)
- AAC, M4A
- Playlists: M3U, WPL, PLS

Connecting through USB audio interface

Lift up the centre armrest.



- AUX-IN port for audio playback: Jack plug 3.5 mm or 1/8 in
- USB interface

Apple iPod/iPhone

Use a flexible adapter cable to make the connection. Apple iPod/iPhone with USB interface **2**.

The menu structure of the Apple iPod/iPhone is supported by the USB audio interface.

USB device

To protect the USB interface and the USB device against mechanical damage, use a flexible adapter cable for connection.

Connect the USB device to the USB interface **2**.

First-time connection

Information about all tracks, such as the artist or music genre, is transferred to the vehicle, along with the playlists. This can take a little time dependent upon the USB device and the number of tracks.

During transfer, the tracks can be called up via the file directory.



Number of tracks

Information from up to four USB devices or for approx. 36,000 tracks can be saved in the vehicle. If a fifth device is connected or more than 36,000 tracks are saved, information relating to existing tracks might be deleted.

Copy protection

Music tracks with integrated Digital Rights Management (DRM) cannot be played.

Playback

1. "CD/Multimedia"
2. "External devices"
3. Select the  or  symbol.



Playback starts with the first track.

If applicable, the CD cover belonging to the first track is displayed on the control display after a few seconds.




Searching for tracks

Selection options via:

- ▷ Playlists
- ▷ Information: music genre, artist, composer (if applicable), album, track
- ▷ Additionally in the case of USB devices: file directory, composer (if applicable)

Tracks are displayed if their titles have been stored in Latin letters.

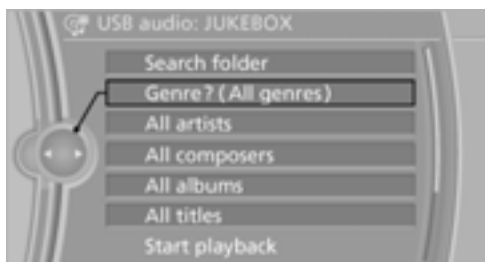
Starting the track search

1. "CD/Multimedia"
2. "External devices"
3. Select the  or  symbol.
4.  "Search"
5. Select the required category, e.g. "Genre", "Artist".

All entries are shown in a list.

- ▷ Call up "A-Z search" and make the desired entry. When you enter a character, a filter is run on the basis of this character as the first letter. When you enter several characters, all the results that contain this character string are displayed.

- ▷ Select the desired entry from the list.



6. Select further categories as appropriate.

Not all categories need to be selected. If, for example, all the tracks of a certain artist are to be displayed, it is sufficient to call up only this artist. All tracks by that artist will be displayed.




7. "Start playback"

Starting a new track search

"New search"




Playlists

Calling up playlists.

1. "CD/Multimedia"
2. "External devices"
3. Select the  or  symbol.
4.  "Playlists"

Currently playing

List of currently played tracks.

1. "CD/Multimedia"
2. "External devices"
3. Select the  or  symbol.
4.  "Current playback"

Random

The current track list is played back in random order.

1. "CD/Multimedia"
2. "External devices"
3. Call up "Options".
4. "Random"

Fast forward/reverse

Press and hold down the  button.



Video playback

Overview



Video playback possible via snap-in adapter. Operation is possible via iDrive. Sound output is via the vehicle's loudspeaker system.

Playback

The video image is only displayed on the control display up to approx. 3 km/h, approx. 2 mph. On some national-market versions, it is only displayed when the handbrake is applied or P is engaged.

1. "CD/Multimedia"
2. "External devices"
3. Select the  symbol.
4.  "Video"
5. Select the directory as appropriate.
To change to a higher-level directory: tilt the controller to the left.
6. Select the desired video file to start playback.

Video menu

Symbol	Format
	Next video file
	Previous video file
	Press the symbol twice if applicable to play back the previous video file.

Notes

Do not expose the audio device to extreme ambient conditions, e.g. very high temperatures, see the operating instructions for the audio device.

Depending on the configuration of the audio files, e.g. bit rates higher than 256 kbps, fault-free playback cannot always be assured.

Notes on connecting up

- ▷ The connected audio device is supplied with a maximum of 500 mA if the device supports this. Therefore, do not connect the device to a socket in vehicle, otherwise fault-free playback cannot be assured.
- ▷ Do not insert the plug forcibly into the USB interface.
- ▷ Do not connect any devices such as fans or lamps to the USB audio interface.
- ▷ Do not connect up USB hard drives.
- ▷ Do not use the USB audio interface for charging external devices.

Bluetooth audio

Overview


- ▷ Music files from external devices, e.g. audio devices or mobile phones, can be played back over Bluetooth.
Using the mobile phone as an audio source, see page 181
- ▷ Sound output is via the vehicle's loudspeaker system.
- ▷ The volume of the sound output depends on the device. Adjust the volume on the device if necessary.

- ▷ Up to four external devices can be paired with the vehicle.

Conditions

- ▷ Compatible device. For information, go to www.bmw.com/bluetooth.
- ▷ Device operational.
- ▷ Ignition switched on.
- ▷ The Bluetooth on the vehicle, see page 191, and on the device must have been activated.
- ▷ Activating Bluetooth audio in the vehicle, see page 192.
- ▷ Bluetooth pre-adjustments have to be made on the device, e.g. connection not with authorisation or visibility, see the operating instructions for the device.
- ▷ Number with at least 4 but no more than 16 digits set as the Bluetooth passkey. Only required for one-off pairing.

Pairing and connection

 Only pair the device while the vehicle is at a standstill so as not to endanger the vehicle's occupants and other road users as a result of being distracted. ◀

1. "CD/Multimedia"
2. "Bluetooth (audio)"
3. If applicable, "Bluetooth audio"
4. "Add new device"

The Bluetooth name of the vehicle is displayed.



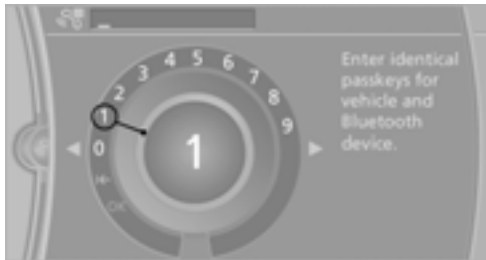
5. Complete the process by following the sequence of steps described in the operating instructions for the device: e.g. Find Bluetooth device, Connect or New device.

The Bluetooth name of the vehicle is shown on the device display.

6. Select the Bluetooth name of the vehicle on the device display.

You are prompted to enter the same Bluetooth passkey on the iDrive or device.


7. Enter and confirm the passkey.



8. Select the required functions with which the device is to be connected, e.g. "Audio".

9. "OK"

If pairing is successful, the device is displayed as connected.

 symbol white: the device is active as an audio source.

If pairing is not successful: What to do if..., see page 186.

Connecting a specific device

A device which has already been paired can be connected as the active audio source.

Connection is not possible if data exchange involving a mobile phone connected over Bluetooth is in progress.

Condition

It might be necessary to activate the audio connection of the desired device from the list of paired devices.

1. "CD/Multimedia"
2. "Bluetooth (audio)"
3. If applicable, "Bluetooth audio"
4. Select the desired device from the list of paired devices.
5. Call up "Options".
6. "Configure device"
7. Activate "Audio".
8. "OK"

Connecting a device

1. "CD/Multimedia"
2. "Bluetooth (audio)"
3. If applicable, "Bluetooth audio"
4. Select the desired device from the list of paired devices.




🎵 symbol white: the device is active as an audio source.

Playback

General guidance

- ▷ The track information displayed is dependent upon the device.
- ▷ Operation is possible via the device or iDrive.
- ▷ Playback is interrupted if data exchange involving a mobile phone connected over Bluetooth is in progress.

Starting playback


1. Connect a device
2. "CD/Multimedia"
3. "External devices"
4. Select the  symbol.



5. If applicable, select the required track from the list.

Playback menu

Dependent on the device, not all functions might be available.

Symbol	Function
	Next track
	Forward: press and hold down the symbol.
	Previous track
	Back: press and hold down the symbol.

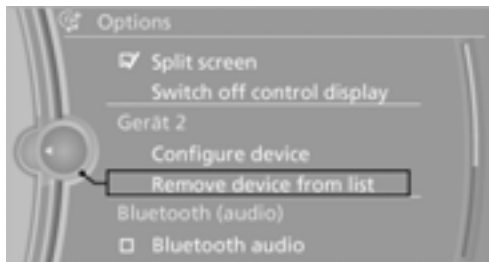
Disconnecting the audio connection

1. "CD/Multimedia"
2. "Bluetooth (audio)"
3. Select the desired device from the list of connected devices.
4. Call up "Options".
5. "Configure device"
6. "Audio"
7. "OK"

On a mobile phone, only the audio connection is disconnected. All other connections remain connected.

Unpairing a device

1. "CD/Multimedia"
2. "Bluetooth (audio)"
3. If applicable, "Bluetooth audio"
4. Select the device to be unpaired.
5. Call up "Options".
6. "Remove device from list"



What to do if ...

For information about compatible devices, go to www.bmw.com/bluetooth.

Compatible mobile phones, see page 190.

- ▷ Device is not supported by the vehicle.
Run a software update if necessary, see page 186.
- ▷ Device could not be paired or connected.
Do the Bluetooth passkeys on the mobile phone and vehicle match? Enter the same passkey on the device and via iDrive.
Does it take more than 30 seconds to enter the passkey? Repeat the pairing procedure.
Are too many Bluetooth devices connected to the device or mobile phone? You might need to disconnect other devices.
Is the mobile phone running in power economy mode or is the battery charge low? Charge the mobile phone in the snap-in adapter or using the charger cable.
Dependent upon the mobile phone, it might only be possible to connect one device to the vehicle. Unpair the connected device from the vehicle and pair and connect just one device.

Has the device stopped responding?
Switch the device off and back on again.

Repeat the pairing procedure.

- ▷ Music playback is not possible.

Start the programme for playing back music files on the device and select a track on the device if necessary.

Activate and then deactivate the mute function on the radio control panel.

- ▷ Music file playback volume is low.

Adjust the volume settings on the device.

- ▷ Playback is distorted by pressing a button or other signals on the device.

Switch off keytones and other audible signals on the device.

- ▷ Playback is interrupted by phone calls and traffic reports and does not resume automatically when these are complete.

Activate and then deactivate the mute function on the radio control panel.

- ▷ Playback is not possible if the mobile phone is connected over Bluetooth audio and the extended connectivity of the music player in the mobile phone simultaneously.

Disconnect one of the connections, e.g. disconnect the audio connection, see page 185, and start playback again.

If all the points in the list have been checked and you are still unable to run the desired function, contact the hotline or Service Centre.

Software update

The vehicle supports various external devices dependent upon the current software. A software update can lead to new mobile phones or new external devices being supported by the vehicle, for example.

The software can be updated via:

▷ USB.

Updates and the latest versions of the corresponding instructions are available on the Internet at www.bmw.com/update.

▷ BMW TeleServices.

Existing software can be updated directly via the vehicle.

Displaying the current version

The currently installed software is displayed.

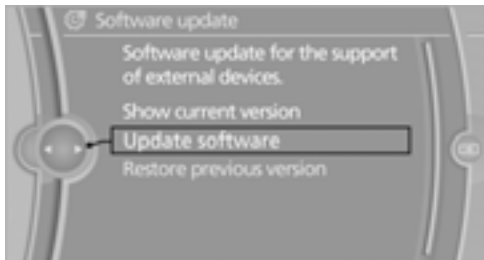
1. "Settings"
2. "Software update"
3. "Show current version"

Select desired version to display additional information.

Updating the software via USB

Software can only be updated when the vehicle is stationary.

1. Save the file for the software update on a USB data memory in the main directory.
2. Connect USB data memory to the USB audio interface in the centre armrest. The software cannot be updated via the USB interface in the glove compartment.
3. "Settings"
4. "Software update"
5. "Update software"



6. "USB" if applicable
7. "Start update"
8. "OK"

All software updates listed are installed.

Updating the software via BMW TeleServices

Software can only be updated when the vehicle is stationary.

1. Switch on the ignition.
2. "Settings"
3. "Software update"
4. "Update software"
5. "BMW TeleServices" if applicable
6. "Start update" if applicable
7. "Start update"
8. "OK"

All software updates listed are installed. To abort the update: "Cancel".

Restoring the previous version

The software version prior to the most recent software update can be restored.

The previous version can only be restored when the vehicle is stationary.

1. "Settings"
2. "Software update"
3. "Restore previous version"
4. Select "OK" twice.

All software updates listed are removed.

Note

During a software update or when restoring the previous version, BMW Services, Office functions and associated devices are unavailable briefly. Wait a few minutes for the functions to become available again.



Communication

This chapter summarises how to make telephone calls and how to use BMW Assist and BMW TeleServices.

Phone

Vehicle equipment

This chapter describes all standard equipment, national market versions and optional equipment featured in the series. Therefore, it also makes reference to equipment which might not be available in a vehicle due to the optional accessories selected or national market versions, for example. This also applies for safety-relevant functions and systems.

Overview

Principle

Mobile phones or other external devices such as audio players can be connected to the vehicle over Bluetooth.

Following one-off pairing, these devices are detected automatically when the ignition is switched on as soon as they are inside the vehicle. They can then be operated using the on-board monitor, the buttons on the steering wheel and by voice control.

Dependent upon device functionality, external devices can be used as phones and/or audio sources in the vehicle. The phone functions are described below. Operation of the audio functions, see page 183.

Up to four external devices can be paired.

Some functions might need to be enabled by your mobile phone provider or service provider.



Only make inputs when it is safe to do so without risk to yourself or other road users. Do not hold the mobile phone in your hand while driving; use the hands-free unit instead. Failure to do so may put the car's occupants and other road users at risk. ◀

Snap-in adapter

The snap-in adapter:

- ▷ Provides a holder for the mobile phone
- ▷ Charges the battery.
- ▷ Establishes a connection to the vehicle's external antenna

This ensures better network reception and consistent sound quality.

Suitable mobile phones

For detailed information about which mobile phones and external devices with Bluetooth interface are supported by the mobile phone preparation, go to www.bmw.com/bluetooth.

Displaying the vehicle identification number and software part number

The vehicle identification number and software part number are required to check which mobile phones are supported by the mobile phone provision. The mobile phone's software version might also be needed.

1. "Telephone"
2. Call up "Options".
3. "Bluetooth Info"
4. "Display system information"

With the software version specified, these compatible mobile phones support the functions of the vehicle described below.

Other types of mobile phone or different software versions could result in malfunctions.

Do not use the keypad on the mobile phone to operate the mobile phone connected to the vehicle as this can lead to malfunctions.

It is possible to run a software update, see page 186.

Notes

At high temperatures, the charge function of the mobile phone may be restricted and functions might fail.

Follow the information provided in the operating instructions for the mobile phone when using the mobile phone in the car.

Pairing/Unpairing a mobile phone

General

The following functions are available:

- ▷ Using the mobile phone as a phone
- ▷ Using the mobile phone as a supplementary phone
- ▷ Using the mobile phone for data transfer
- ▷ Using the mobile phone as an audio source
- ▷ Using the audio device as an audio source, see page 183

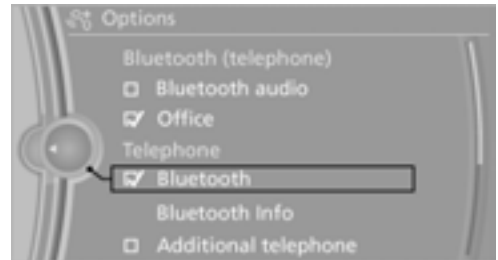
Conditions

- ▷ Compatible mobile phone, see page 190
- ▷ Mobile phone operational
- ▷ Bluetooth activated on the vehicle, see page 193, and on the mobile phone
- ▷ Bluetooth pre-adjustments might have to be made on the mobile phone, e.g. connection not with authorisation or visibility, see the operating instructions for the mobile phone
- ▷ Deactivate Bluetooth audio if applicable, see page 191.
- ▷ Number with at least 4 but no more than 16 digits set as the Bluetooth passkey. Only required for one-off pairing.
- ▷ Ignition switched on.

Deactivating/activating Bluetooth connection

Bluetooth is not permitted everywhere. Comply with national legislation.

1. "Telephone"
2. Call up "Options".
3. "Bluetooth"



Additional functions

Supplementary phone

A mobile phone can be used as a supplementary phone.

Incoming calls on the supplementary phone can be accepted, see page 195. Missed calls on the supplementary phone are shown on the control display.

Data transmission

A mobile phone connected as a phone or supplementary phone can be used for data transfer. Data transfer is displayed in the status bar.

Making a connection may incur a charge.

The BMW Roadside Assistance, Hotline, Teleservice Call, Automatic Teleservice Call and Internet services are available. A valid BMW Assist contract is required to use these services.

The availability of the function is country-specific and series-specific. The mobile phone must provide compatible support for the necessary Bluetooth radio standards, be equipped with an appropriate mobile phone tariff and have suitable Internet settings.

To disconnect data transmission whilst in progress:

1. Call up "Options".
2. "Transferring data via device"

The additional function for data transmission is deactivated and cannot be assigned to any other device.

Office

Contacts, appointments, tasks, notes, SMS and e-mail messages are transferred to the vehicle.

Audio source

A mobile phone can be used as an audio source.


Activating/Deactivating additional functions

Functions must be activated before pairing if they are to be used in the vehicle. Information about compatible mobile phones which support these functions, see page 190.

1. "Telephone"
2. "Bluetooth (telephone)"
3. Call up "Options".
4. "Configure Bluetooth"
5. Select the required additional function:
 - ▷ "Additional telephone"
 - ▷ "Transferring data via device"
 - ▷ "Office"
 - ▷ "Bluetooth audio"

As long as an additional function is deactivated, it cannot be assigned to a telephone.

Pairing and connection

 Only pair the device while the vehicle is at a standstill so as not to endanger the vehicle's occupants and other road users as a result of being distracted. ◀

1. "Telephone"
2. "Bluetooth (telephone)"
3. "Add new device"

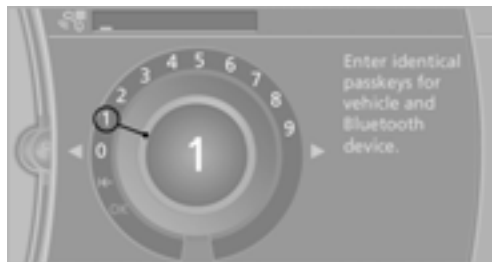
The Bluetooth name of the vehicle is displayed.



4. Complete the process by following the sequence of steps described in the operating instructions for the mobile phone: e.g. Find Bluetooth device, Connect or New device.

The Bluetooth name of the vehicle is shown on the display of the mobile phone.

5. Select the Bluetooth name of the vehicle on the mobile phone display.
6. You are prompted to enter the same Bluetooth passkey on iDrive or the mobile phone.



Enter and confirm the passkey.

or

Compare the security number on the vehicle display with the security number on the mobile phone display. Confirm the security number on the mobile phone and in the vehicle.

"OK"

7. Select the functions for which the mobile phone is to be used.





8. "OK"

If pairing was successful, the mobile phone appears in the first position in the list of devices.

Functions supported by the mobile phone and audio device are displayed as symbols when pairing.

White symbol: function is active.

Grey symbol: function is not active.

Symbol	Function
	Phone
	Supplementary phone
	Data transmission
	Audio source

Four devices can be paired with the vehicle at the same time. Three devices can be connected to the vehicle at the same time.

If pairing is not successful: What to do if..., see page 194.

After pairing for the first time

- ▷ Mobile phone is detected/paired in the vehicle after a short delay when the engine is running or the ignition switched on.
- ▷ The phone book entries saved on the SIM card or mobile phone are transferred to the vehicle once the phone has been detected dependent upon the mobile phone.
- ▷ Four devices can be paired.
- ▷ Some mobile phones may require certain settings, authorisation or secure connection, see operating instructions of the mobile phone.

Connecting a specific device

1. "Telephone"

2. "Bluetooth (telephone)"

All devices paired are listed.

3. Select the device to be connected.

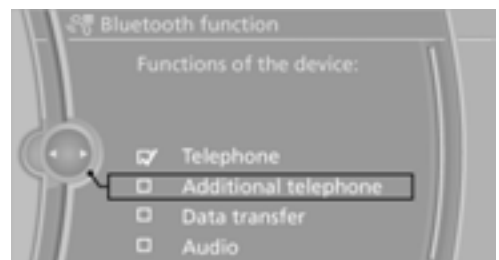


The functions assigned to the device prior to pairing are reassigned to it on reconnection. In the case of a device which is already connected, these functions might be deactivated.

Configuring devices

Additional functions can be activated or deactivated on paired and connected devices.

1. "Telephone"
2. "Bluetooth (telephone)"
3. Highlight the device to be configured.
4. Call up "Options".
5. "Configure device"
6. Select the required functions. At least one function must be selected.
 - ▷ "Telephone"
 - ▷ "Additional telephone"
 - ▷ "Data transfer"
 - ▷ "Audio"



7. "OK"

When a function is assigned to a device, it might be deactivated on a device which is already connected and that device unpaired.

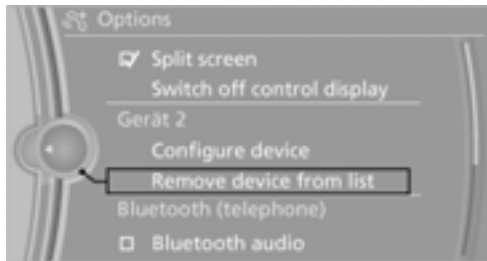
Swapping the phone and supplementary phone

If both the phone and the supplementary phone are connected in the vehicle, the function can be swapped between the two devices.

1. "Telephone"
2. "Bluetooth (telephone)"
3. "Change phone/addit. phone"

Unpairing a device

1. "Telephone"
2. "Bluetooth (telephone)"
 - All devices paired are listed.
3. Select the device to be unpaired.
4. Call up "Options".
5. "Remove device from list"



What to do if ...

Information about compatible mobile phones, see page 190.

Unable to pair or connect mobile phone.

- ▷ Is Bluetooth activated in the vehicle and on the mobile phone? Activate Bluetooth in the vehicle and on the mobile phone.
- ▷ Do the Bluetooth passkeys on the mobile phone and vehicle agree? Enter the same passkey on the mobile phone and using iDrive.

- ▷ Does it take more than 30 seconds to enter the passkey? Repeat the pairing procedure.
- ▷ Too many Bluetooth devices paired to the mobile phone? If necessary delete the pairing information on the mobile phone for some other device.
- ▷ Is the audio connection activated? Deactivate the audio connection.
- ▷ Is the mobile phone running in power economy mode or is the battery charge low? Charge the mobile phone in the snap-in adapter or using the charger cable.
- ▷ Dependent upon the mobile phone, it might only be possible to connect one device to the vehicle. Unpair the connected device from the vehicle and pair and connect just one device.

The mobile phone has stopped responding.

- ▷ Switch the mobile phone off and back on again. Repeat the pairing procedure if necessary.
- ▷ Is the ambient temperature too high or too low? Do not expose the mobile phone to extreme ambient conditions.

Telephone functions not possible.

- ▷ Is the mobile phone paired as a supplementary phone and has the supplementary phone function been deactivated? Activate the function.
- ▷ Can no outgoing calls be made? Connect the mobile phone as a phone.

Phone book entries are not being displayed at all, only some of the entries are being displayed or the entries are incomplete:

- ▷ Phone book entry transfer has not been completed.
- ▷ It might be the case that only the phone book entries from the mobile phone or the SIM card have been transferred.
- ▷ Phone book entries with special characters may sometimes not be displayed.
- ▷ Too many phone book entries to be saved.

- ▷ Is the phone book entry data volume too great, e.g. due to additional information such as notes? Reduce the data volume.
- ▷ Is the mobile phone connected as an audio source or supplementary phone? The mobile phone has to be connected as a phone.

The quality of the telephone connection is poor.

- ▷ The strength of the Bluetooth signal can be adjusted to suit the mobile phone.
- ▷ Place the mobile phone in the snap-in adapter or in the area of the centre console.
- ▷ Set the volume of the microphone and loudspeaker separately.

If all the points in the list have been checked and you are still unable to run the required function, check www.bmw.com/bluetooth for more information or contact the hotline or Service.

Operation

Adjust volume



Turn the knob until the desired volume is reached. The setting is memorised for the remote control currently in use.

The vehicle sets the volume of the microphone on the mobile phone and the volume of the calling party automatically. The volumes might need to be adapted in line with the mobile phone.

The settings can only be made during a call and have to be made separately for each phone. The

settings are deleted when the phone is unpaired.

1. "Settings"
2. "Tone"
3. "Volume settings"
4. Select the desired setting: "Microphone" or "Loudspeaker."
5. Adjusting: turn controller.
6. Memorising: press controller.

Incoming call

Receiving a call


If the caller's number is saved in the phone book and transferred by the network, the name and number of the contact is displayed. Otherwise, just the number is displayed.

If more than one phone number has been assigned to a contact, only the name of the caller is displayed.

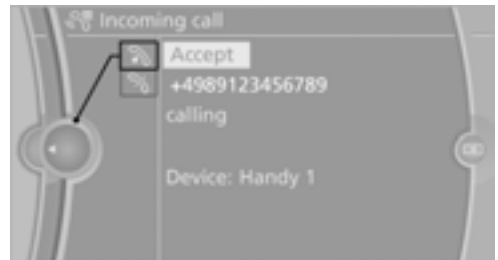
In the case of calls on the supplementary phone, only the number is displayed if it is transferred by the network.

An incoming call on one phone is rejected automatically if a call is in progress on the other phone.

Accepting a call

Press the  button on the steering wheel or

 "Accept"




Rejecting a call

 "Reject"

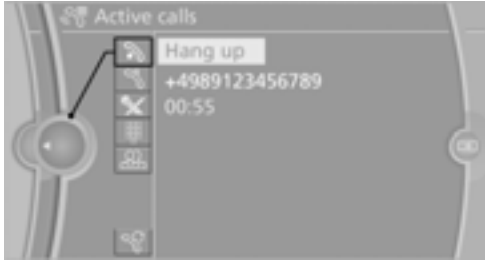
The caller is diverted to your mailbox if this has been activated.

Ending a call

Press the  button on the steering wheel


or

1. "Telephone"
2.  "Hang up"



Phone number entry

Dialling a number

1. "Telephone"
2. "Dial number"
3. Select the digits individually.
4. Select the  symbol.



Phone numbers can also be entered by voice.

Calls with a number of participants

General


It is possible to switch between calls and merge two calls to set up a conference. The functions

have to be supported by the mobile phone and the service provider.

Accepting a call during another call

This function might have to be enabled by the service provider and the mobile phone configured for this service.


If there is a second call during an ongoing call, a waiting signal will sound if applicable.

 "Accept"

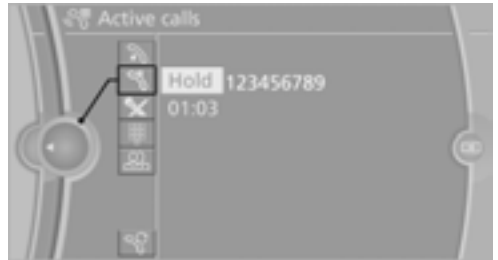
The call is accepted and the existing call is held.

Setting up a second call

Set up another call during a call.

1. "Telephone"
2. "Active calls"
3.  "Hold"

The current call is held.



4. Dial a new phone number or select from a list.

 "Resume"

The held call is resumed.

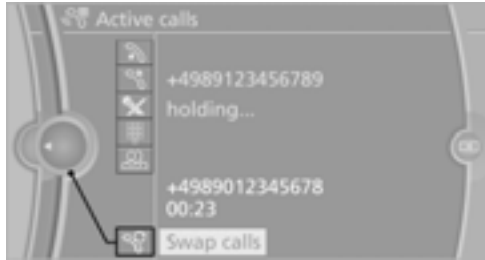
Switching between two calls, alternating

Active call: highlighted.

Held call identified by:
"holding..."


 "Swap calls"

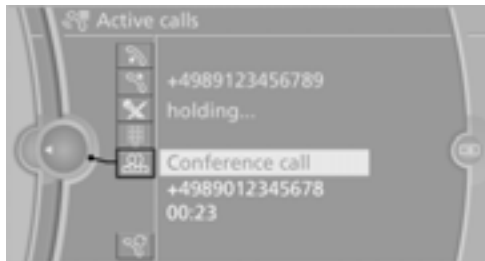
The phone switches to the held call.



Setting up a conference

Two calls can be merged to set up a telephone conference.


1. Setting up two calls.
2.  "Conference call"

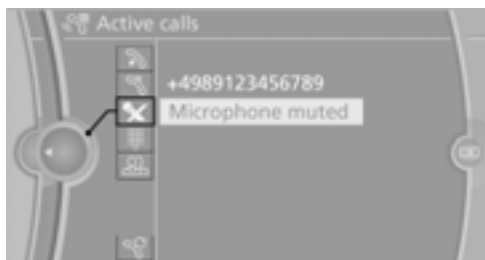


On termination, both calls are always terminated. If one call is terminated by another subscriber, the other call is continued, if required.

Muting the microphone

The microphone can be set to mute during an active call.

1. "Telephone"
2. "Active calls"
3.  "Microphone muted"




A muted microphone is activated automatically:

- ▷ Whenever a new call is made or received
- ▷ Whenever the phone switches to another caller who has previously been on hold

DTMF suffix dialling

DTMF suffix dialling is used to access network services or to control devices, e.g. to pick up messages on an answering machine remotely. The DTMF code is required.

1. "Telephone"
2. Select contact from a list or "Dial number"
3.  "DTMF suffix dialling"
4. Enter the DTMF code.

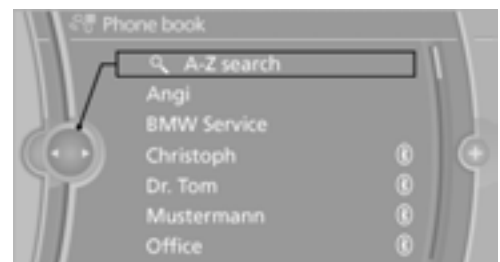
Phone book

Displays




The phone book accesses the contacts on the phone and shows all the contacts for which a phone number has been entered. The entries can be selected and a call set up.

1. "Telephone"
2. "Phone book"

A symbol indicates the storage location of the contacts, see page 204.



Calling a contact

Symbol	Meaning
	Contact with one phone number saved.
	Contact with more than one phone number saved.
	Call not possible, mobile phone without reception or network or Teleservice Call active.

For contacts with one phone number saved:
Select the desired contact. Connection is established.

For contacts with more than one phone number saved: select the required contact and then the phone number. Connection is established.

Editing contacts

Editing the entries in the "Contacts" menu. If a contact is changed, the changes are not saved on the mobile phone. A copy of the entry is saved in the vehicle.

1. Highlight the contact.
2. Call up "Options".
3. "Edit entry"

The contact can be edited.

Redialling

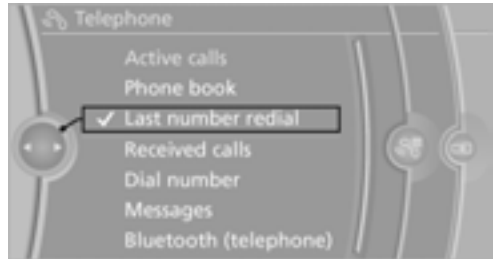
General

A list of the numbers dialled is transferred from the phone to the vehicle on a phone-specific basis. It might be the case that only numbers dialled from the vehicle are displayed.

The last 20 phone numbers dialled are stored. The numbers are sorted on a phone-specific basis.

Dialling numbers via iDrive

1. "Telephone"
2. "Last number redial"



3. Select the required entry or, if applicable, the required phone number.

The connection is established.

Deleting an individual entry or all entries

The deletion of entries is device-specific.

1. Highlight the entry.
2. Call up "Options".
3. "Delete entry" or "Delete list".

Saving an entry in 'Contacts'

1. Highlight the entry.
2. Call up "Options".
3. "Save as new contact" or "Add to existing contact".
4. Select a contact as appropriate.
5. Select the type of number: "Home", "Work", "Mobile" or "Others".
6. If necessary, complete the entries.
7. "Save contact"

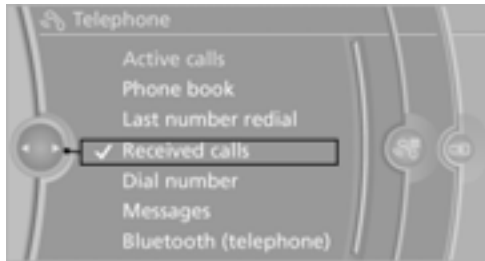
Incoming calls

Displaying numbers

A list of incoming calls is transferred from the phone to the vehicle on a phone-specific basis. It may be the case that only incoming calls to the vehicle are displayed.

The last 20 incoming calls are displayed. The numbers are sorted and displayed on a phone-specific basis.

1. "Telephone"
2. "Received calls"



Making calls to numbers from the list

Select the entry.

The connection is established.

Deleting an individual entry or all entries

The deletion of entries is device-specific.

1. Highlight the entry.
2. Call up "Options".
3. "Delete entry" or "Delete list".

Saving an entry in 'Contacts'

1. Highlight the entry.
2. Call up "Options".
3. "Save as new contact" or "Add to existing contact".
4. Select a contact as appropriate.
5. Select the type of number: "Home", "Work", "Mobile" or "Others".
6. If necessary, complete the entries.
7. "Save contact"

Hands-free unit

General

Calls made and received using the hands-free unit can be switched over to the mobile phone and vice versa.

From the mobile phone to the hands-free unit

Calls started outside the Bluetooth range of the vehicle can be switched over to the hands-free unit if the ignition is switched on.

Depending on the type of mobile phone, switchover to hands-free mode may take place automatically.

If switchover is not automatic, follow the instructions on the mobile phone display, see also the operating instructions for the mobile phone.

From the hands-free unit to the mobile phone

In some cases calls made and received using the hands-free unit can be switched over to the mobile phone, dependent upon the model.

Follow the instructions on the mobile phone display, see also the operating instructions for the mobile phone.

Operation by voice control

Equipment with voice control system:
Operation, see page 24.

Equipment without voice control system:
Depending on equipment, the mobile can be operated by voice as described as follows.

The list of short commands in the operating instructions does not apply to this type of voice control.


Principle

- ▷ You can use the mobile phone without taking your hands off the steering wheel.


- ▷ In many cases, entries are made by saying commands or asking questions.
- ▷ ›...‹ Identifies commands for the voice operation system.

Speaking commands

Activating voice control

1. Press the  button on the steering wheel.
2. Issue the command.

Completing voice control


Press the  button on the steering wheel or

 ›Cancel‹.

Possible commands

Having possible commands read aloud

The system understands predefined commands which need to be given exactly, word for word.

 ›Help‹.


Possible commands are read aloud.

Digits from zero to nine are understood.


You can say each digit individually or say the entire number as a block to speed up the input process.

Using alternative commands

There are often several different commands available for performing the same function, e.g.:

 ›Dial name‹ or ›Name‹.

An example: dialling a phone number


1. Press the  button on the steering wheel.
2. ›Dial number‹
The system says: ››Please say the number.‹‹.
3. E.g. ›123 456 7890‹
The system says: ››123 456 7890. Continue?‹‹.

4. ›Dial‹

The system says: ››Dialling number.‹‹.

Making a call

Dialling a phone number

1.  ›Dial number‹.
2. Say the phone number.
3. ›Dial‹.

The connection with the desired subscriber is established.

Correcting a phone number

A block of digits can be deleted once the system has repeated the digits concerned.

 ›Correct number‹.

The command can be repeated as often as you wish.

Deleting a phone number

 ›Delete‹.

All previously entered digits are deleted.

Redial


 ›Redial‹.

Voice-activated phone book

Depending on the equipment available in your vehicle, it may be necessary to create a separate voice-activated phone book.

The entries must be made using voice control and are independent of the memory of your mobile phone. Up to 50 entries can be set up.

Saving entry

1.  ›Save name‹.
2. Say the name. Do not speak for more than approx. 2 seconds.
3. When prompted by the system, say the phone number.
4. ›Save‹.

Deleting entry

1. ›Delete name‹ .
2. When asked to do so, say the name.
3. Confirm request: ›Yes‹

Deleting all entries

1. ›Delete phonebook‹ .
The dialogue for deleting the phone book is called up.
2. Confirm request: ›Yes‹
3. Confirm request again: ›Yes‹

Reading out and selecting entries:

1. ›Read phonebook‹ .
The dialogue for reading out the phone book is called up.
2. ›Dial name‹, when the desired entry is read aloud.

Selecting an entry

1. ›Dial name‹ .
2. When asked to do so, say the name.
3. Confirm request: ›Yes‹

Adjusting the volume

Turn the knob whilst you are speaking.

- ▷ The volume remains set to this level even if the volume of other audio sources is adjusted.
- ▷ The volume setting is memorised for the remote control currently in use.

Notes

Information for emergency calls

Do not use voice control for emergency calls. In stress situations, the spoken language and voice pitch can change. This delays establishment of a telephone connection unnecessarily.

Use the SOS button, see page 256, near the inside mirror instead.

Ambient conditions

- ▷ Say commands, digits and letters fluently and in a normal volume, intonation and speed.
- ▷ Always say the commands in the language of the voice control system. The language of the mobile phone's voice control system is set by default and cannot be modified via the control display.
- ▷ Keep doors, windows and the glass roof closed to avoid noise interference.
- ▷ Avoid causing background noise in the car while you are speaking.

Snap-in adapter

General

Please contact Service Centre for more information about which snap-in adapters are compatible with the functions of your mobile phone.

Notes

At high temperatures, the charge function of the mobile phone may be restricted and functions might fail.

Follow the information provided in the operating instructions for the mobile phone when using the mobile phone in the car.

Installation location

In the centre armrest

Inserting the snap-in adapter

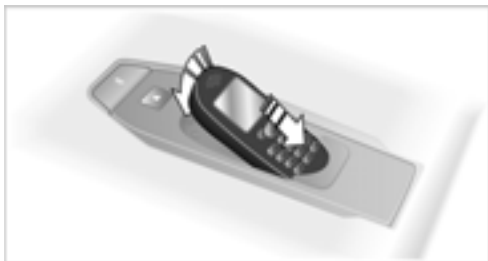
1. Press the button and remove the cover.



2. Insert the snap-in adapter at the front, arrow 1, and press down, arrow 2, until it engages.



Inserting the mobile phone



1. Dependent upon the mobile phone model, you might need to remove the protective cap from the antenna connector and from the USB connection on the mobile phone.
2. Push the mobile phone with the keys upwards towards the electrical connections and press down until it engages.

Removing the mobile phone



Press the button and remove the mobile phone.

Office

Vehicle equipment

This chapter describes all standard equipment, national market versions and optional equipment featured in the series. Therefore, it also makes reference to equipment which might not be available in a vehicle due to the optional accessories selected or national market versions, for example. This also applies for safety-relevant functions and systems.

Overview


General

Contacts, appointments, tasks, notes, SMS messages and e-mails from the mobile phone can be displayed on the control display if the mobile phone provides compatible support for these functions and the necessary Bluetooth standards.

For information about which mobile phone support the Office function, go to www.bmw.com/bluetooth.

Content is only displayed in full when the vehicle is stationary.

Access to the mobile phone is read-only.

 Do not use Office whilst driving. Only make adjustments if the traffic conditions are sufficiently quiet or clear, so as not to endanger the vehicle's occupants and other road users by being distracted. ◀

Conditions

- ▷ A suitable mobile phone has been paired with the vehicle and is connected. In the case of some mobile phones, data access has to be confirmed on the phone.
- ▷ The time zone, time of day and date, see page 84, have been set correctly on the control display and on the mobile phone, so

that appointments are displayed correctly, for example.

- ▷ Office is activated, see page 192.

Updating

Data is updated each time the mobile is connected with the vehicle. Appointments, tasks, notes and reminders can be separately updated.

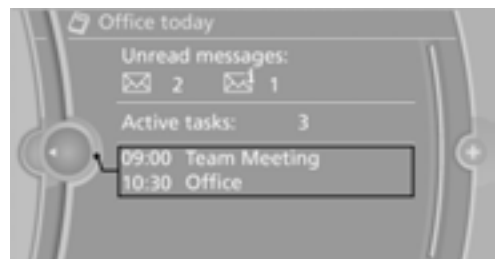
1. "Office"
2. "Office today", "Calendar", "Tasks", "Notes" or "Reminders"
3. Call up "Options".
4. "Update data"

Data from mobile is again transmitted to the vehicle.

Office today

The number of unread messages and active tasks are displayed, along with pending appointments.

1. "Office"
2. "Office today"
3. Select the required entry to display detailed information.



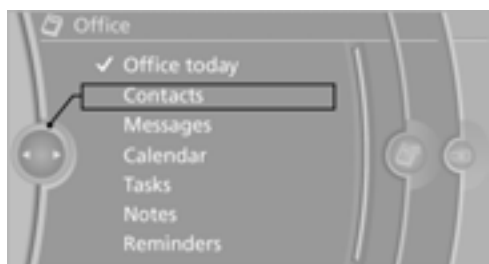
Contacts

General

Contacts can be created and edited. The contacts from the mobile phone are also displayed if the mobile phone supports this function, as are contacts from the BMW Online address book. The addresses can be used as navigation destinations and the phone numbers dialed directly.

Displaying contacts

1. "Office"
2. "Contacts"



All contacts are listed in alphabetical order. Depending on the number of contacts, the A-Z search is offered.

A symbol indicates the storage location of the contacts:

Symbol	Storage location
No symbol	In the vehicle, address not checked as destination.
	In the vehicle, address checked as destination.
	Mobile phone
	BMW Online address book

Displaying contacts from BMW Online

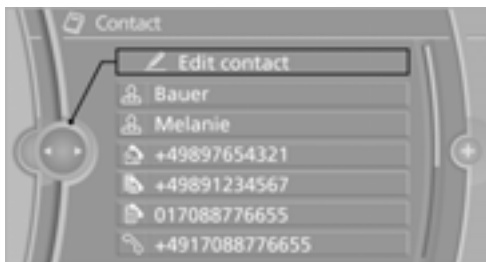
Activate "Login automatically" when pairing, see page 217, to display contacts from BMW Online.

Dialling a phone number

1. Select the desired contact.
2. Select the phone number.
The connection is established.

Editing contacts

1. Select the desired contact.
2. "Edit contact"



3. Change entries.
4. "Save contact in car"

If a contact originating from the mobile phone or from BMW Online is changed, the changes are not stored on the mobile phone or at BMW Online. A copy of the entry is stored in the vehicle and only the copy is displayed.

Selecting a contact as a navigation destination

1. Select the desired contact.
2. Select an address.

For contacts from the mobile phone and from the BMW Online address book, the address might need to be matched to the navigation data stored in the vehicle. If that is the case:

Correct the address.

3. "Start guidance" or "Add as another destination"

Checking an address as a destination

An address that is to be adopted into the route guidance must match the navigation data contained in the vehicle. The address can be checked for this purpose.

1. Select the desired contact and highlight the address.
2. Call up "Options".
3. "Check as destination"
4. If necessary, correct and save the address.

If you correct and save the address, a copy will be created in the vehicle. The address is not changed on the mobile phone or at BMW Online.

Displaying the Internet address of a contact

You can call up an Internet address stored for a contact.

1. Select the desired contact.
2. Select the Internet address.
The selected Internet address is displayed in the browser.

Displaying additional information from BMW Online

Display of additional information for a contact if present at BMW Online.

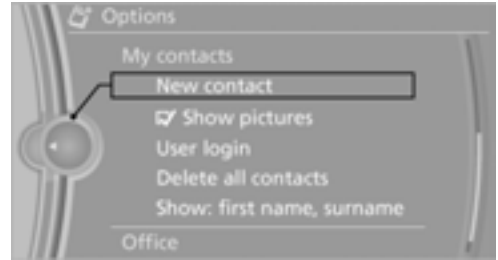
1. Select the desired contact.
2. Call up "Options".
3. "Further info (BMW Online)"

New contact

Up to 8 phone numbers, 2 addresses, 3 e-mail addresses and 1 Internet address can be assigned to a single contact.

1. "Office"
2. "Contacts"
3. Call up "Options".

4. "New contact"



5. Input boxes still containing previous entries: "Clear fields"
6. To complete the input fields: select the symbol next to the input field.
7. Enter the text and assign a contact type.
8. If your vehicle is fitted with a navigation system: enter an address. Only addresses which are contained in the navigation data in the vehicle can be entered. This ensures that route guidance is possible for all addresses.
9. If applicable, "Accept address"
10. "Save contact in car"

Contact types

Various contact types can be assigned to phone numbers and addresses.

Symbol	Meaning
	Personal phone number
	Business phone number
	Mobile phone number
	Other phone number
	Personal address
	Business address

Entering a home address

You can store a home address. Home addresses appear first in contact details.

1. "Home address"
2. Create contact.
3. "Save contact in car"

Selecting the order in which names are sorted

You can change the order in which names are sorted and displayed.

1. "Office"
2. "Contacts"
3. Call up "Options".
4. "Show: surname, first name" or "Show: first name, surname"

Depending on how contacts are displayed on your mobile phone, the order in which names are displayed can differ from the selected sort order.

Displaying contact photos

When the mobile phone is connected to the vehicle, photos saved for contacts are displayed in the vehicle. The mobile phone must support this function.

1. "Office"
2. "Contacts"
3. Call up "Options".
4. "Configure Bluetooth"
5. "Show pictures"

Display of all contact photos is activated or deactivated.

Deleting contacts

Only the contacts saved in the vehicle are deleted. The contacts from the mobile phone or from BMW Online cannot be deleted.

1. "Office"
2. "Contacts"
3. Highlight the contact.
4. "Options"
5. "Delete contact" or "Delete all contacts".

Messages

General

The display of SMS and e-mail messages from the mobile phone depends on whether data transfer into the vehicle is supported by the mobile phone. SMS messages and e-mails might not be supported by the service provider or must be enabled separately. When a mobile phone is paired for the first time, the transfer process can take several minutes. Messages are only displayed in full when the vehicle is stationary. Messages from the supplementary phone are not displayed.

Display of different messages:


- ▷ SMS
- ▷ Messages from My Info
- ▷ Messages from BMW information service
- ▷ Messages from BMW Info
- ▷ E-mails from the mobile phone.


Displaying messages






1. "Office"
2. "Messages"

Message type

A symbol indicates the type of message.

 Read message.

 Unread message.

Symbol	Message type
	SMS
	My Info
	Messages from the information service, see page 215
	Message from BMW Info, see page 208
	E-mail from mobile phone

Filtering the message list

The message list can be filtered if it contains more than one type of message.

1. "Filter:"



2. Select a message type.
 - ▷ "All"
All messages are displayed.
 - ▷ "E-mail"
Only e-mails from the mobile phone are displayed.
 - ▷ "Services messages"
Only messages from BMW information service, My Info and BMW Info are displayed.
 - ▷ "SMS"
Only SMS messages from the mobile phone are displayed.

Deleting messages

Messages from the information service, My Info, BMW Info and BMW Online can be deleted.

To delete an individual message:


1. "Office"
2. "Messages"
3. Select the desired message.
4. Call up "Options".
5. Call up "Delete message".

To delete all messages:

1. "Office"
2. "Messages"
3. Call up "Options".
4. "Delete all messages"

SMS

Calling the sender of an SMS

1. Select the desired message.
2. Select the  symbol.

Saving the sender in Contacts

1. Highlight the desired message.
2. Call up "Options".
3. "Save as new contact" or "Add to existing contact"

Managing contact data

Contact data from appointments, tasks, SMS messages, e-mails and notes can be saved or selected, see page 211.


Reading out SMS messages

Reading out SMS messages, see page 211.

My Info



Replies




Send a predefined reply.

1.  Select the desired message.
2. Call up "Options".
3. "Answer"

Selecting additional functions


Additional functions are available when a message is selected.

Symbol	Function
	"Start guidance" or "Add as another destination"
	"Call"
	If the message contains just one number, a telephone connection is established.

Symbol	Function
	"Select phone number" If the message contains more than one number, select the required number from the list. A telephone connection is established.
	"Send e-mail (BMW Online)"
	"Open link in browser" Call up Internet address.







Message from information service

Saving an address

1.  Select the desired message.
2. Call up "Options".
3. "Save contact in car"

Selecting additional functions

Additional functions are available when a message is selected.

Symbol	Function
	"Start guidance" or "Add as another destination"
	"Call" If the message contains just one number, a telephone connection is established.
	"Select phone number" If the message contains more than one number, select the required number from the list. A telephone connection is established.
	"Send e-mail (BMW Online)"
	"Open link in browser" Call up Internet address.
	"Further information" Display additional information.

BMW Info

General

Messages from BMW about technical campaigns and news from BMW.






Displaying messages



Select the desired message.


Selecting additional functions

The following functions are available when a message is selected:

Symbol	Function
	"Further information" Detailed information about a message is displayed. This incurs charges.
	"Start guidance" or "Add as another destination"
	"Call" If the message contains just one number, a telephone connection is established.
	"Select phone number" If the message contains more than one number, select the required number from the list. A telephone connection is established.
	"Open link in browser" Call up Internet address.

E-mail

Displaying e-mail

1. "Office"
2. "Messages"
3.  Select the desired message.

Displaying e-mail contacts

If the sender and recipient of an e-mail are included in the data transmitted by the mobile phone, they are displayed in the e-mail.

 "Sender/recipient"

If the e-mail address is saved in the contacts, the contact is displayed. Select the contact to display the details.

If the e-mail address is not saved in the contacts, it may be the case that only the e-mail address is displayed.

Managing contact data

Contact data from appointments, tasks, SMS messages, e-mails and notes can be saved or selected, see page 211.

Deactivating full display

When you open an e-mail in the vehicle, it is transferred to the vehicle in full. This can incur charges.

1. "Office"
2. "Messages"
3. Call up "Options".
4. "Fully download e-mail"
Only part of the e-mail is downloaded from the mobile phone to the vehicle.

Reading out e-mails

Reading out e-mails, see page 211.

Calendar

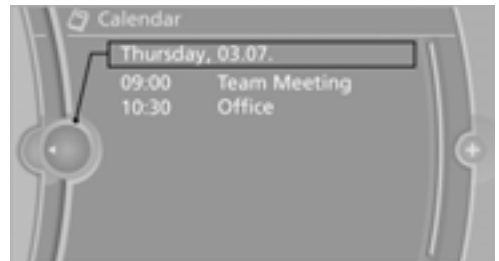
Displaying the calendar

Appointments for the last 20 and the next 50 days can be displayed.

1. "Office"
2. "Calendar"
Displays appointments for the current day.



Selecting a calendar day

1. Select a date.



2. Select the required data or date.
 - ▷ "Next day"
 - ▷ "Date:"
 - ▷ "Day before"
 - ▷ "Today"

Displaying appointments

1. Select the desired appointment.
2. Scroll through the appointment if necessary:
 - ▷ Turn controller.
 - ▷ Select the   symbol.

Managing contact data

Contact data from appointments, tasks, SMS messages, e-mails and notes can be saved or selected, see page 211.

Reading out an appointment

Reading out an appointment, see page 211.

Tasks

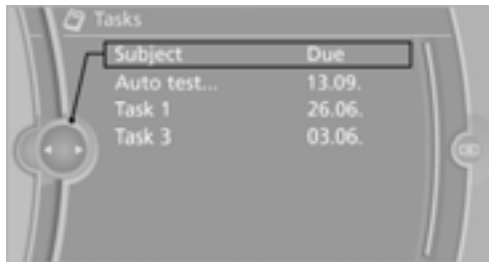
Displaying the task list

Display open tasks due in the next 90 days.

1. "Office"
2. "Tasks"

Sorting the task list



1. Select the header in the task list.



2. Select a sort criterion:

- ▷ "Priority (!)"
- ▷ "Subject"
- ▷ "Due date"

Displaying a task

1. Select the desired task.
2. Scroll through the task if necessary:
 - ▷ Turn controller.
 - ▷ Select the   symbol.

Managing contact data

Contact data from appointments, tasks, SMS messages, e-mails and notes can be saved or selected, see page 211.

Reading out a task

Reading out a task, see page 211.

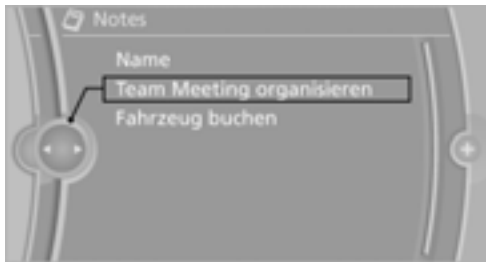
Notes

Displaying notes



1. "Office"
2. "Notes"
 - Displays all notes.

Displaying a note

1. Select the desired note.



2. Scroll through the note if necessary:

- ▷ Turn controller.
- ▷ Select the   symbol.

Managing contact data

Contact data from appointments, tasks, SMS messages, e-mails and notes can be saved or selected, see page 211.

Reading out a note

Reading out a note, see page 211.

Reminders

Displaying reminders

Reminders about appointments and tasks are displayed when they become due. The reminder is no longer displayed once the time and date of an appointment passes or a task becomes due.

1. "Office"
2. "Reminders"
3. Select the desired reminder.


The associated appointment or task is displayed.

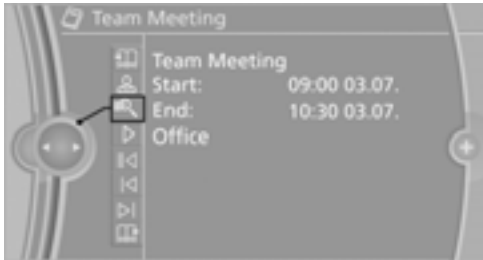
Managing contact data

Overview

Contact data from appointments, tasks, SMS messages, e-mails and notes can be saved or selected.


Displaying a contact or dialling a phone number

1.  "Use contact data"



2. Display a contact or dial a phone number:
 - ▶ Select a contact to display the detailed view for it.
 - ▶ Select a phone number to establish a connection directly.

Saving contact data





1.  "Use contact data"
2. Highlight the phone number or e-mail address.
3. Call up "Options".
4. "Add to existing contact" or "Save as new contact"

Reading out

SMS, e-mails, appointments, tasks and notes can be read out.

1. Select the desired message, appointment, task or note.
2. Select the ▶ symbol.

The following options are available whilst an item is being read out:

- ▶  "Pause"
Interrupt reading-out. Select again to restart reading-out.
- ▶  "To beginning"
Read out message again from start.
- ▶ Select the  symbol.
Go back a section.
- ▶ Select the  symbol.
Skip section.
- ▶ To stop reading-out, tilt the controller to the left.

What to do if ...

Information about compatible mobile phones, see page 190.

- ▶ Appointments, tasks, notes, SMS or e-mails from the mobile phone are not being displayed?
Your mobile phone is not suitable for the missing function or has not been connected correctly.
The Office function has not been assigned to your mobile phone.
Your mobile phone is connected as a supplementary phone.
Your appointments are more than 20 days old and more than 50 days in the future.
Your tasks are marked as completed or are more than 90 days in the future.
There might be too many appointments, tasks, notes and messages stored in the mobile phone for all of them to be displayed in the vehicle.
- ▶ Dates or tasks from the mobile phone are not being displayed at the right time?
The time zone, time of day and date have not been set correctly on the control display and on the mobile phone.
- ▶ The e-mail attachment is not being displayed?

E-mails are sent minus attachments.

- ▷ Entry texts are not being displayed in full?
Texts are being truncated when transferred from the mobile phone.
Synchronisation between mobile phone and vehicle can take several minutes.
- ▷ Contact photos are not being displayed?
Up to 200 contact photos can be stored in the vehicle.
- ▷ E-mail display delayed?
Check and if necessary modify the e-mail settings on the phone.
- ▷ If all the points in the list have been checked and you are still unable to run the required function, contact the hotline or Service.

Contacts

Vehicle equipment

This chapter describes all standard equipment, national market versions and optional equipment featured in the series. Therefore, it also makes reference to equipment which might not be available in a vehicle due to the optional accessories selected or national market versions, for example. This also applies for safety-relevant functions and systems.

Note

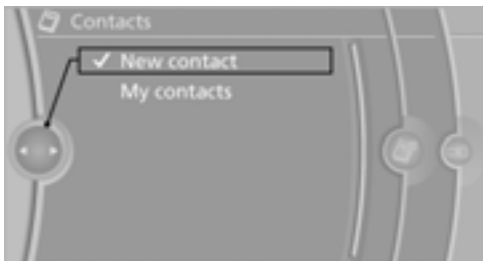
Equipment without mobile phone provision.

General

Contacts can be created and edited. The addresses can be adopted as destinations for the navigation.

New contact

1. "Contacts"
2. "New contact"



3. Input boxes still containing previous entries:
"Clear fields"

4. To complete the input fields: select the symbol next to the input field.



5. Enter text, see page 23.

If your vehicle is fitted with a navigation system: enter an address. Only addresses which are contained in the navigation data in the vehicle can be entered. This ensures that route guidance is possible for all addresses.

6. If applicable, "Save"
7. "Save contact in car"

Entering a home address

You can store a home address. Home addresses appear first in contact details.

1. "Home address"
2. Create contact.
3. "Save contact in car"

My contacts

General

List of all contacts saved in the vehicle.



Displaying contacts

1. "Contacts"
2. "My contacts"



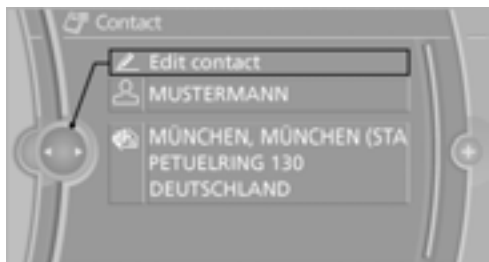
All contacts are listed in alphabetical order. Depending on the number of contacts, the A-Z search is offered.

A symbol indicates the storage location of the contacts:

Symbol	Storage location
No symbol	In the vehicle, address not checked as destination.
	In the vehicle, address checked as destination.
	Mobile phone

Editing contacts

1. Select the desired contact.
2. "Edit contact"



3. Change entries.
4. Tilt the controller to the left.
5. "Yes"

Selecting a contact as a navigation destination

1. Select the desired contact.
2. Select an address.
3. "Start guidance" or "Add as another destination"

Checking an address as a destination

An address that is to be adopted into the route guidance must match the navigation data contained in the vehicle. The address can be checked for this purpose.

1. Select the desired contact and highlight the address.
2. Call up "Options".
3. "Check as destination"
4. If necessary, correct and save the address.

Selecting the order in which names are sorted

You can change the order in which names are sorted and displayed.

1. "My contacts"
2. Call up "Options".
3. "Show: surname, first name" or "Show: first name, surname"

Exporting/Importing contacts

Contacts can be exported and imported using Personal Profiles, see page 30.

Deleting contacts

1. "My contacts"
2. Highlight the contact.
3. Call up "Options".
4. "Delete contact" or "Delete all contacts".

ConnectedDrive

Vehicle equipment

This chapter describes all standard equipment, national market versions and optional equipment featured in the series. Therefore, it also makes reference to equipment which might not be available in a vehicle due to the optional accessories selected or national market versions, for example. This also applies for safety-relevant functions and systems.

BMW Assist

General

BMW Assist provides certain services, e.g. an information service.

The exact offering is country-specific. BMW Service will be glad to answer any questions you might have.

BMW Assist can also be used via the Internet, where other services are available:
www.bmw.com

During a connection to BMW Assist, it might not be possible to establish a telephone connection via the mobile phone. If the mobile phone is to be used, unpair it from the vehicle.

BMW TeleServices

General

TeleServices supports communication with BMW Service.

- ▷ Data regarding the service requirements of the vehicle can be transferred directly to BMW Service. This enables BMW Service to prepare for the necessary work in advance. The workshop stay is shortened.
- ▷ In the event of a breakdown, data regarding the condition of the vehicle can be trans-

ferred to BMW Roadside Assistance. It might be that malfunctions can be remedied directly.

- ▷ The offering is country-specific.
- ▷ Connection charges can be incurred.
- ▷ Services can be limited abroad.

Conditions

- ▷ BMW Assist is activated.
If BMW Assist is not activated, a mobile phone recommended by BMW for TeleServices and configured for mobile data communication must be connected to the vehicle.
- ▷ The SIM card is enabled for free service numbers.
- ▷ There is mobile radio communications reception.
- ▷ Ignition is switched on.

Using BMW TeleServices

BMW TeleServices are usually activated in the vehicle.

If TeleServices are not active, you can continue to make voice contact with BMW Roadside Assistance.

To continue to use these services or to have them deactivated, please contact your Service partner or call the BMW customer hotline.

Information service

General

Information about hotels, out-of-hours pharmacies, etc., for example. Phone numbers and addresses can be sent to the vehicle and called directly or entered as navigation destinations.

Starting the information service

1. "BMW Services" or "ConnectedDrive"
2. "Info plus"



3. "Start service"

A voice connection with BMW's information service is established. Phone numbers and addresses can be sent as messages.

Messages

Information about messages, see page 206.

Breakdown recovery

Overview

Possible establishment of contact with BMW Roadside Assistance if you need help in the event of a breakdown.

Contact with BMW Roadside Assistance can also be established via a Check Control message, see page 86.

Starting roadside assistance without BMW Assist or BMW TeleServices

1. "BMW Services" or "ConnectedDrive"
2. "BMW Mobile Care"

The number for Roadside Assistance is displayed. If a mobile phone is logged on, a

connection to BMW Roadside Assistance will be established.



Starting roadside assistance with BMW Assist or BMW TeleServices

If your vehicle is equipped with TeleServices, you will be offered assistance initially by Teleservice Diagnosis and subsequently by Teleservice Help.

1. "BMW Services" or "ConnectedDrive"
2. "BMW Mobile Care"
3. "Start service"



BMW Teleservice Diagnosis

The BMW Teleservice Diagnosis enables the transmission of detailed vehicle data that is required for the diagnosis of the vehicle by mobile phone. This data is transferred automatically.

Once the data has been transferred, a voice connection to BMW Roadside Assistance is established.

Teleservice Help

Teleservice Help enables a more detailed diagnosis of the vehicle by BMW Roadside Assistance via mobile telephony.

Following a prompt from the BMW Roadside Assistance and after terminating the voice connection, the Teleservice Help can be started.

Starting Teleservice Help

1. Park the vehicle safely.
2. Apply the parking brake.
3. Ignition is switched on.
4. "Teleservice Help"

After completion of the Teleservice Help, a voice connection to BMW Roadside Assistance is established.

BMW Online

Overview

BMW Online is an online portal that provides you with certain in-car services, e.g. weather information, the latest news, share prices, access to e-mails and a personal address book.

Licensing terms:

This product contains NetFront Browser software from ACCESS Co., Ltd. Copyright © 2007 ACCESS Co., Ltd. All rights reserved.

NetFront is a trademark or registered trademark of ACCESS Co., Ltd. in Japan and in other countries.

This software is based in part on the work of the Independent JPEG Group.

Conditions

- ▷ You have registered for BMW Online with BMW Service.
- ▷ A mobile communications network must be available.

- ▷ The vehicle must be able to determine the current location for certain services, such as for information on the current location.
- ▷ The current date is set on the control display, see page 86.

Starting BMW Online

1. "BMW Services" or "ConnectedDrive"
2. "BMW Online"



3. "OK" if applicable

The BMW Online start page is displayed.

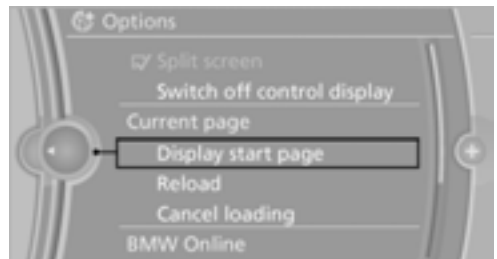
Using BMW Online

To select and display content:

- ▷ Turn the controller to highlight an element.
- ▷ Press the controller to display the element.

Call up home page

1. Call up "Options".
2. "Display start page"



Reloading a page

1. Call up "Options".
2. "Reload"

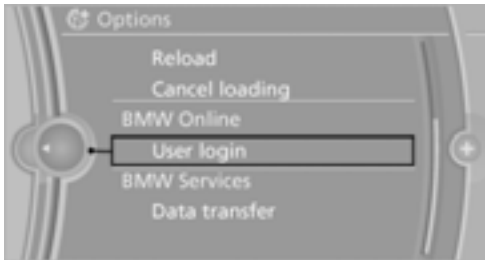
Cancelling

1. Call up "Options".
2. "Cancel loading"

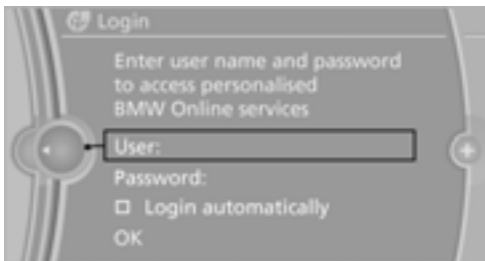
Logging on

You need to log on to display contacts from BMW Online or other personal data.

1. "BMW Services" or "ConnectedDrive"
2. "BMW Online"
3. Call up "Options".
4. "User login"



5. "User:"



6. Enter your user name and select "OK".
7. "Password:"
8. Enter your password.
9. "OK"

Automatic logon

The logon takes place automatically when BMW Online is called up.

"Login automatically"

Logging off

1. "BMW Services" or "ConnectedDrive"
2. "BMW Online"
3. Call up "Options".
4. "User logoff"

BMW Live

Overview

BMW Live is an online portal that provides specific services for use in the vehicle, e.g. weather forecasts.

BMW Live is available via mobile phone SIM cards.

Note the information about data transfer, see page 191.

Licensing terms:

This product contains NetFront Browser software from ACCESS Co., Ltd. Copyright © 2007 ACCESS Co., Ltd. All rights reserved.

NetFront is a trademark or registered trademark of ACCESS Co., Ltd. in Japan and in other countries.

This software is based in part on the work of the Independent JPEG Group.

Conditions

- ▷ A mobile communications network must be available.
- ▷ Some functions require you to enter an e-mail address before they can be used.
- ▷ The vehicle must be able to determine the current location for certain services, such as for information on the current location.
- ▷ The current date is set on the control display, see page 86.

Starting BMW Live

1. "BMW Services" or "ConnectedDrive"
2. "BMW Live"

The BMW Live start page is displayed.

Using BMW Live

To select and display content:

- ▷ Turn the controller to highlight an element.
- ▷ Press the controller to display the element.

Call up home page

1. Call up "Options".
2. "Display start page"

Reloading a page

1. Call up "Options".
2. "Reload"

Cancelling

1. Call up "Options".
2. "Cancel loading"

Internet

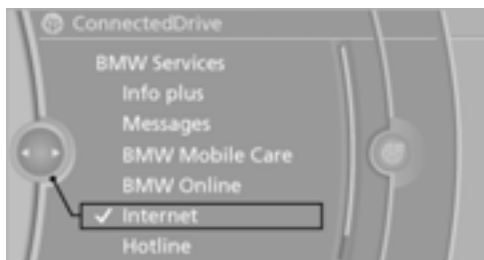
General

For your own safety, the video image is only displayed up to approx. 5 km/h, approx. 3 mph. On some national-market versions, it is only displayed when the handbrake is engaged.

The Internet is available via the SIM card installed in the vehicle or the SIM card in the mobile phone. Follow the data transmission instructions if you are using the Internet via the SIM card in the mobile phone, see page 191.

Calling up the Internet

1. "BMW Services" or "ConnectedDrive"
2. "Internet"



3. If applicable, "OK"

The home page is displayed. It is possible that the Internet sites are not displayed in the same way as on a PC. In the case of Flash or Java applications, content may not be displayed correctly.

Licensing terms:

This product contains NetFront Browser software from ACCESS Co., Ltd. Copyright © 2007 ACCESS Co., Ltd. All rights reserved.

NetFront is a trademark or registered trademark of ACCESS Co., Ltd. in Japan and in other countries.

This software is based in part on the work of the Independent JPEG Group.


Operating the Internet

Menu bar

A menu bar for operation is displayed. To activate the menu bar, tilt the controller to the left if required, until the cursor is located in the menu bar.

Symbol	Function
	Activate mouse pointer
	Call up home page
	Refresh, reload
	Cancelling
	Back
	Enter URL
	Bookmarks/favourites
	Zoom
	Close browser

Navigating with the mouse pointer


1. Select the  symbol.
2. Navigate the page with the mouse pointer.
 - ▷ To move the mouse pointer: tilt the controller in the corresponding direction.
 - ▷ To move the mouse pointer diagonally: tilt the controller in the corresponding direction and turn it.
 - ▷ To select an element: move the mouse pointer onto the element and press the controller.
 - ▷ To scroll: turn controller.

Status display

A symbol on the top left of the control display indicates the status.

Symbol	Meaning
	No connection possible
	Data transfer/connection
	Secure connection

Enter Internet addresses


1. Select the  symbol.
2. Enter an address and select "OK".
Tilt the controller upwards to switch between upper and lower case.



Favourites/Bookmarks


Adding favourites

The page currently displayed is saved as a favourite.


1. Select the  symbol.
2. "Add to favourites"

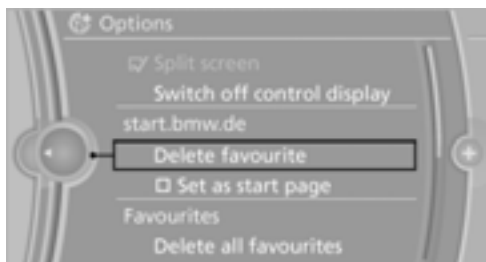


Selecting a favourite


1. Select the  symbol.
2. Select the required favourite.

Deleting favourites

1. Select the  symbol.
2. Mark the favourite you wish to delete.
3. Call up "Options".
4. "Delete favourite" or "Delete all favourites".



Setting a favourite as your start page

1. Select the  symbol.
2. Mark the required favourite.
3. Call up "Options".
4. "Set as start page"

Disconnecting

1. "Options"
2. "Transferring data via device"

The connection is terminated immediately when the function is deactivated.

Settings

Suppressing cookies

1. Call up "Options".
2. "Suppress cookies"

Suppressing pop-ups

1. Call up "Options".
2. "Suppress pop-ups"

Suppressing security warnings

1. Call up "Options".
2. "Suppress HTTPS pop-ups"

Hotline

Overview

Call the BMW hotline for information about all aspects of your vehicle.

Calling the hotline

Equipment without BMW Assist or BMW TeleServices

1. "BMW Services" or "ConnectedDrive"
2. "Hotline"

The telephone number of the hotline is displayed. If a mobile phone is logged on, a connection to BMW Roadside Assistance may be established.

Equipment with BMW Assist or BMW TeleServices

1. "BMW Services" or "ConnectedDrive"
2. "Hotline"
3. "Start service"

Teleservice Call

Overview

Let your Service partner know that you want to book a service appointment. The Teleservice

data is transferred. If possible, your Service partner will establish contact with you.

Starting a Teleservice Call

1. "BMW Services" or "ConnectedDrive"
2. "Teleservice Call"
3. "Start service"

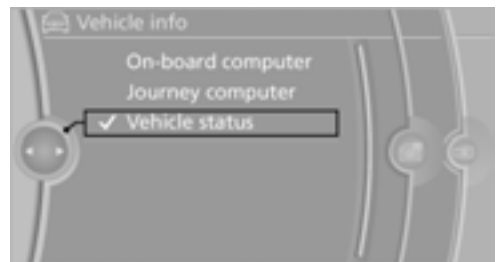


Automatic Teleservice Call

The Teleservice data on the service status of your vehicle is transferred automatically to your Service partner before a due date. If possible, the partner will make contact and a service appointment can be agreed.

Check when a message was sent to your Service partner.

1. "Vehicle information"
2. "Vehicle status"



3. Call up "Options".
4. "Last Teleservice Call"

Service partners

Possible establishment of contact with the service partner.

Displaying Service partners

1. "BMW Services" or "ConnectedDrive"
2. "Your Service"

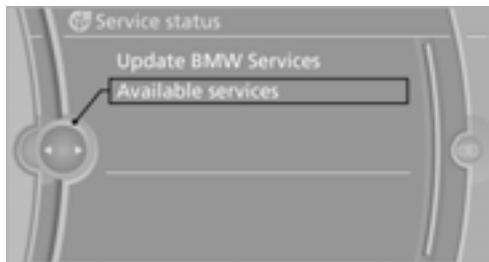
If a mobile phone is logged on, a connection to the service partner will be established.

Service status

Display available services

Display of all services available in the vehicle.

1. "BMW Services" or "ConnectedDrive"
2. "Service status"
3. "Available services"



Updating BMW Services

Manual activation of BMW TeleServices, BMW Assist and BMW Online.

"Update BMW Services"

Data transmission

The status of the data transfer is displayed.

1. "BMW Services" or "ConnectedDrive"
2. Call up "Options".
3. "Data transfer"

Apps

Overview

Certain software applications supported by a suitable mobile phone can be integrated into the vehicle. These software applications are displayed on the control display. They are operated via iDrive.

Conditions

- ▷ The mobile phone's operating system supports apps
- ▷ Software applications have been installed on the mobile phone and are ready for operation
- ▷ Suitable mobile phone
- ▷ Appropriate mobile phone contract
Any additional costs incurred must be borne by the user separately.

Please visit www.bmw.com/connectivity or contact Service for information about suitable mobile phones, available software applications and their installation.



You must only make use of these applications if the traffic conditions are sufficiently quiet or clear, so as not to endanger the vehicle's occupants and other road users by being distracted.

For safety reasons, some software applications can only be used when the vehicle is stationary. ◀



To avoid the risk of malfunctions, only use software applications approved by BMW. ◀

Using apps

1. Connect your mobile phone via the snap-in adapter or the USB audio interface.
2. "ConnectedDrive"
3. Select the required software application.

Displaying the status

Information about the currently available software applications can be displayed.

1. "ConnectedDrive"
2. "BMW apps"

PlugIn

Selected functions of the mobile phone are shown on the control display. They are operated via iDrive.

1. Connect your mobile phone via the snap-in adapter.
2. "ConnectedDrive"
3. "PlugIn"
4. "Activate PlugIn"
5. Use the controller to navigate within the displayed functions and select the required category or track, for example.



Press the button to move up or down a level within the functions.



Press the button twice to return to the main menu.

Notes

- ▷ The scope of the apps shown on the control display is determined by the scope of installed software applications on the mobile phone.
- ▷ It can take a while to transfer the data for the software applications from the mobile phone to the vehicle. Some software applications are dependent upon the speed of the Internet connection provided by the mobile phone.
- ▷ Some versions of the mobile phone used and its software do not allow apps and the Bluetooth hands-free system to be used at the same time.
You might need to restart the software application on the mobile phone after finishing a call.

Advanced BMW Online services

Vehicle equipment

This chapter describes all standard equipment, national market versions and optional equipment featured in the series. Therefore, it also makes reference to equipment which might not be available in a vehicle due to the optional accessories selected or national market versions, for example. This also applies for safety-relevant functions and systems.

General

The advanced BMW Online services can be used to exchange information and data with the vehicle via BMW Online.

The functions of the advanced BMW Online services are listed below.

Navigation

- ▷ Import trips, see page [145](#).
- ▷ Information about BMW Online points of interest, see page [141](#).
- ▷ Display the latest traffic regulations and information for the country in which you are travelling, see page [153](#).

CD/Multimedia

- ▷ Update album information, see page [178](#).

Contacts

- ▷ Display the BMW Online address book, see page [204](#).
- ▷ Display additional information about a contact, see page [205](#).

BMW Online and the Internet

- ▷ BMW Online, see page [217](#).
- ▷ Internet, see page [219](#).





Mobility


To assist you in preserving your car's mobility, this section contains important information on operating fluids, wheels and tyres, maintenance and minor repairs.

Refuelling

Vehicle equipment

This chapter describes all standard equipment, national market versions and optional equipment featured in the series. As such, it includes descriptions of equipment that might not be available in a vehicle on account of the optional equipment selected, for example, or the national-market version. This also applies for safety-relevant functions and systems.

General guidance

 If the range is below 50 km, approx. 30 miles, refuel the vehicle, otherwise the engine's functions are not assured and damage may occur. ◀

Diesel engines

The filler neck is designed to accommodate the filler nozzles of diesel fuel pumps.

Fuel filler flap


Opening



1. Open the fuel filler flap. To do so, lightly press the rear edge.
2. Turn the tank cap counter-clockwise.
3. Place the tank cap in the holder on the flap.

Fastening

Fit the tank cap and turn clockwise until it is clearly heard to click into place.

 Do not jam the strap attached to the tank cap, as otherwise the tank cap cannot be closed properly and fuel vapours can escape. ◀

Manually releasing the fuel filler flap

In the event of a malfunction, you can unlock the fuel filler flap manually:

1. Remove the cover from the right-hand wall of the luggage compartment.




2. Pull the knob with the fuel pump symbol upwards.
The fuel filler flap is released.


Note when refuelling

When refuelling, insert the filler nozzle fully into the filler neck. Avoid lifting the filler nozzle during refuelling, otherwise

- ▷ The supply of fuel will be cut off prematurely
- ▷ Fuel vapour and fumes will be fed back less effectively

The fuel tank is full when the filler nozzle cuts out for the first time.

 Do not overfill the fuel tank, otherwise fuel might leak, causing damage to both the environment and the vehicle. ◀

 When handling fuel, comply with the safety regulations displayed by filling stations, otherwise there is a risk of injury or damage. ◀

Fuel tank capacity


- ▷ Cars with petrol engine: approx. 53 litres, approx. 11.7 gal, including a reserve of approx. 8 litres, approx. 1.8 gal.
- ▷ Cars with diesel engine: approx. 51 litres, approx. 11.2 gal, including a reserve of approx. 6.5 litres, approx. 1.4 gal.

Fuel

Petrol

For optimum fuel consumption, the petrol should be sulphur-free or at least low-sulphur.


Fuels which are marked on the fuel pump as containing metal must not be used.

 Do not fill your vehicle with leaded petrol or petrol containing metal additives such as manganese or iron, as this will result in permanent damage to the catalytic converter and other components. ◀

Fuels with a maximum ethanol content of 10%, i.e. E10 may be used.

With the Brazilian national market specification, fuel compliant with specification Brazil ANP No. 309-xx can be used.

xx: always note the currently valid standard.

 Do not fill the tank with E85, i.e. fuel containing 85% ethanol, nor with flex fuel. Otherwise the engine and fuel supply system will be damaged. ◀

Fuel grade


The engine is knock-controlled. As a result, it can be filled with various fuel grades.

Recommended fuel grade

Premium grade fuel RON 95.

Minimum grade


Lead-free fuel with RON 91.

 Do not use fuel below the specified minimum grade, otherwise the engine function cannot be assured. ◀

National-market specification for leaded fuel

This specification enables you to run the car on leaded petrol, in addition to the fuel grades listed above. The minimum approved grade is RON 91.

Diesel


 Do not use Rapeseed methyl ester RME, biodiesel or petrol. If the wrong type of fuel has been added, do not start the engine, otherwise you risk causing damage to it. ◀

If you fill up with the wrong fuel grade, contact Service.

Diesel quality

The engine is rated to run on diesel fuel DIN EN 590.

Winter-grade diesel

 Do not mix in additives (including petrol); otherwise, there is a risk of engine damage. ◀

Winter-grade diesel must be used to ensure that the diesel engine will operate reliably during the cold months of the year.

Winter-grade diesel is sold by filling stations during this time.

Fuel filter heating is installed as standard equipment to prevent the fuel solidifying during operation.

BMW recommends BP fuels 

Wheels and tyres

Vehicle equipment


This chapter describes all standard equipment, national market versions and optional equipment featured in the series. As such, it includes descriptions of equipment that might not be available in a vehicle on account of the optional equipment selected, for example, or the national-market version. This also applies for safety-relevant functions and systems.

Tyre pressures

Information for your safety

The condition of the tyres and maintenance of the correct tyre pressures not only influence tyre life but are also decisive factors in road safety and ride quality.

Checking pressures

 Check the tyre pressures regularly: but at least twice a month and before setting out on any long journey. Incorrect tyre pressures can adversely affect the car's roadholding and cause tyre damage, which could result in an accident. ◀

Tyre pressure values



The tyre pressures for your standard tyres are visible on the driver's door post when the driver's door is open.

If you do not see any tyre pressures listed for your tyres' speed code letter, observe the tyre pressures for the corresponding size, e.g. 255/45 R 17.



After correcting tyre pressures, reinitialise the Run Flat Indicator, see page 93. ◀

Tyre pressures for heavy loads and trailer towing

For trailer towing, the tyre pressures specified for higher load apply.

Tyre size

These tyre pressures apply to sizes of tyre approved by BMW and makes of tyre recommended by BMW; details are available from Service.

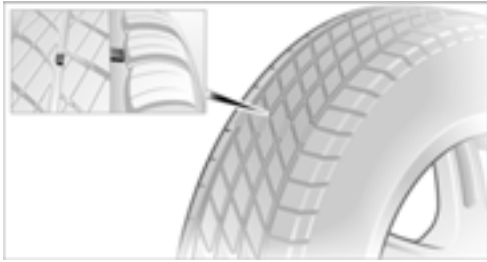
Condition of tyres

Inspect tyres frequently for damage, the presence of foreign bodies, unusual wear and sufficient tread depth.

Minimum tread depth

The tyre tread depth should not be allowed to drop below 3 mm, approx. 1/8 in. Below a tread depth of 3 mm, approx. 1/8 in, there is an increased risk of aquaplaning when driving on wet roads at higher speeds.


Below a tread depth of 4 mm, approx. 3/16 in, winter tyres become noticeably less suitable for winter driving conditions. New tyres should be fitted in the interests of safety.



Wear indicators in the base of the tread groove are distributed around the tyre's circumference; the letters TWI – Tread Wear Indicator – on the tyre's flanks identify tyres that incorporate these wear indicators. Once the tyre tread has worn down to the wear indicators, the tyre has worn to 1.6 mm, approx. 1/16 in.

Tyre damage

Unusual vibration while the car is being driven could indicate a tyre fault or some other defect on your car. This may have been caused e.g. by driving over a kerb or similar. The same applies to any other abnormal road behaviour, such as pulling severely to the right or left.

 In such cases, reduce speed immediately and have the wheels and tyres checked without delay. Drive carefully to the nearest service centre or tyre specialist. Have the car towed there if necessary.

Otherwise tyre damage could result in accidents with potentially fatal consequences for the vehicle's occupants and other road users. ◀


Age of tyres

For various reasons, such as the development of brittleness, BMW recommends tyre replacement after no more than 6 years, regardless of the actual wear of the tyres.


A tyre's date of manufacture is included in the inscription on the tyre:

DOT...1013 means that the tyre was manufactured in week 10 of 2013.


New wheels and tyres

 Have all new wheels and tyres fitted by Service or a tyre specialist. If such work is performed inexpertly, it could result in consequential damage and thus constitute a safety risk. Make sure that the new wheels are balanced. ◀

Retreaded tyres

 BMW advises against the use of retreaded tyres, as these could adversely affect the car's safety. Their carcasses may differ in internal construction or have aged sufficiently to limit their durability. ◀

Appropriate wheels and tyres

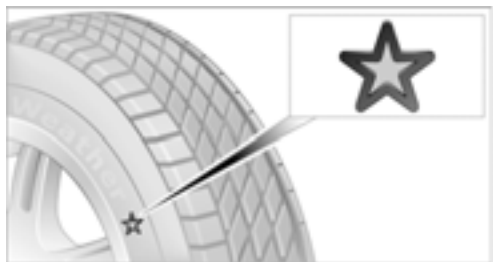
 BMW recommends fitting only wheels and tyres that it has approved for your type of vehicle, otherwise the tyres may e.g. make contact with the vehicle body due to impermissible tolerances, even though they are of an approved size; this could result in a serious accident. BMW is unable to assess the suitability of wheels and tyres it has not approved and cannot therefore guarantee their safety. ◀

Details of the correct wheel and tyre combinations can be obtained from Service.

The correct wheel and tyre combination also has an influence on various systems, the function of which could otherwise be adversely affected, for instance ABS, DSC or RPA.

To maintain the vehicle's good road behaviour, always fit tyres of the same make and tread pattern to all wheels. After a tyre has been damaged, fit the original wheel and tyre combination again as soon as possible.

Recommended makes of tyre



Certain makes of tyre are recommended by BMW for each tyre size. They are marked with a clearly visible BMW designation on the sidewall of the tyre.

When properly used, these tyres meet the highest standards in terms of safety and handling characteristics.

Run-flat tyres

When fitting new tyres or changing over from summer to winter tyres and vice versa, fit run-flat tyres for your own safety. In the event of a flat, no spare wheel is available. Service will be glad to advise you on this.

Special characteristics of winter tyres

BMW recommends winter tyres for operation on winter roads or at temperatures below +7 °C/ 45 °F. Although all-season tyres with an M+S marking have better winter characteristics than summer tyres, they do not normally match the performance of winter tyres.

Noting speed limit for tyres



Always comply with the speed limit for the winter tyres fitted to your vehicle; failure to do so could result in tyre damage and accidents. ◀

If the car is capable of speeds higher than that permitted for the winter tyres, a label stating the maximum permitted speed for the tyres fitted must be displayed in your field of view. Specialist tyre dealers and Service can supply these labels.

Tyre storage

Store wheels and tyres in a cool, dry and preferably dark place when not in use. Protect tyres against contamination from oil, grease and fuel.

Tyre rotation between axles

Even with tyres of the same size, BMW recommends that you do not rotate the front and rear wheels by swapping over in either direction, as this may impair handling characteristics. With mixed tyre sizes, swapping over between the axles is not permitted.

Run-flat tyres



The symbol identifying run-flat tyres is the circle with the letters RSC on the sidewall. Run-flat tyres comprise a conditionally self-supporting tyre and a special rim. The reinforcement in the side walls ensures that the tyre can continue to be used subject to certain restrictions, even if depressurised.

For information on continuing to drive with a flat tyre, see Indication of a flat tyre on page 94.

Repairing a flat tyre



Safety precautions in the event of a puncture:

Park the car as far as possible from moving traffic, on a firm surface. Switch on the hazard warning flashers.

Allow the steering-wheel lock to engage with the wheels in the straight-ahead position. Apply the handbrake and engage first gear or reverse

or selector-lever position P.

All occupants must leave the car and be led to a point where they are not exposed to risk, for example behind a crash barrier at the side of the road.

If necessary, set up a warning triangle or a flashing warning light at a sufficient distance. Comply with relevant local laws. ◀

In the event of a puncture, the proper procedure depends on your vehicle's equipment:

- ▷ BMW Mobility System, see page 233
- ▷ Run-flat tyres, see page 231

BMW Mobility System

Notes

- ▷ Comply with the instructions for application of the Mobility System on the compressor and sealant cylinder.
- ▷ Use of the Mobility System may be ineffective for tyre damage measuring more than approx. 4 mm, approx. 3/16 in.
- ▷ Please contact Service if the tyre cannot be rendered usable again with the Mobility System.
- ▷ If an object has penetrated the tyre, it is best to leave it in position.
- ▷ Remove speed limit sticker from the sealant cylinder and attach to the steering wheel.

Storage

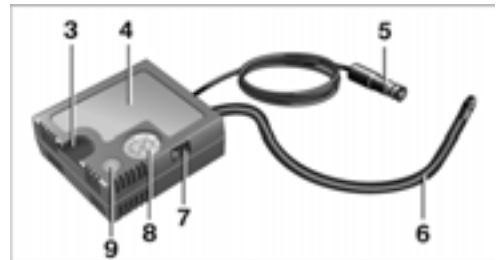
The Mobility System is housed in the luggage compartment beneath the floor mat.

Sealant cylinder and compressor



- 1 Sealant cylinder with speed limit sticker
- 2 Filler hose

Note the expiry date on the sealant cylinder.



- 3 Holder for the sealant cylinder
- 4 Compressor
- 5 Connector/cable for the socket
- 6 Connecting hose for connecting the compressor and the sealant cylinder or the compressor and the wheel
- 7 On/off switch
- 8 Pressure gauge for displaying tyre pressure
- 9 Deflation button to reduce the tyre pressure


The plug, cable and connecting hose are stored in the compressor housing.

Using the Mobility System

To repair a punctured tyre with the Mobility System, proceed as follows:

- ▷ Fill with sealant.
- ▷ Distribute the sealant.
- ▷ Adjust the tyre pressure.

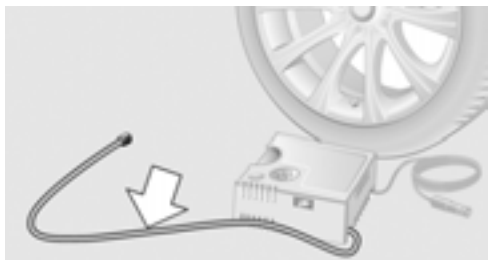
Filling with sealant

 Please keep to the following sequence to avoid the sealant escaping with high pressure. ◀

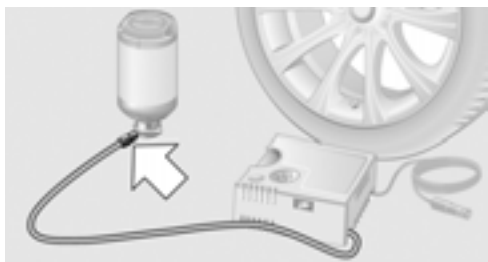
1. Shake the sealant cylinder.



2. Take the connecting hose fully out of the compressor housing.



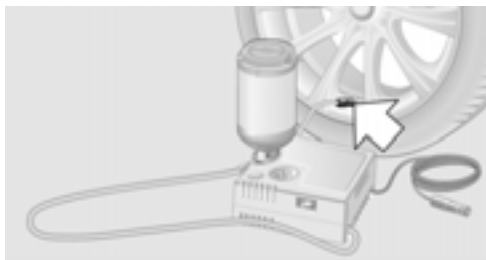
3. Screw the connecting hose to the connection on the sealant cylinder. Do not kink the hose.



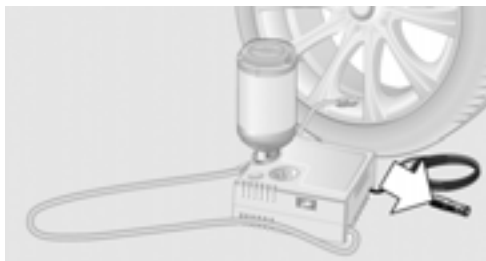
4. Connect the sealant cylinder to the compressor housing in an upright position.



5. Screw the filler hose from the sealant cylinder to the valve on the faulty wheel.

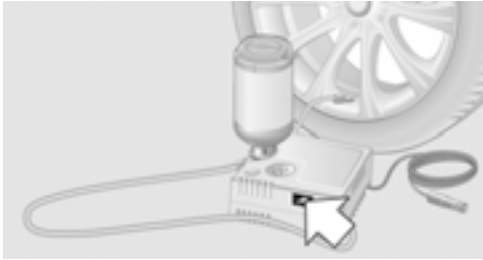


6. Make sure that the compressor is switched off.
7. Insert the connector into the socket inside the vehicle, see page 114.




8. With the engine running or the ignition switched on, switch on the compressor. Let the compressor run for approx. 3 to 8 minutes to fill the sealant and achieve a


tyre pressure of approx. 2.5 bar, approx. 36.3 psi.



9. Switch off the compressor.

During the filling process, the inflation pressure displayed can briefly rise to approx. 5 bar, approx. 72.5 psi. Do not switch off the compressor whilst this value is displayed.

 Never run the engine in enclosed spaces, as inhaling the harmful exhaust gas can lead to loss of consciousness with fatal consequences. The exhaust gas contains carbon monoxide, which is colourless and odourless, but highly toxic. ◀

 Do not allow the compressor to run for longer than 10 minutes. Otherwise the device will overheat and may be damaged. ◀

If a tyre pressure of 2 bar, approx. 29 psi, is not achieved:

1. Switch off the compressor.
2. Unscrew the filler hose from the wheel.
3. Move forward and back 10 m, approx. 33 ft, to distribute the sealant in the tyre.
4. Pump up the tyre again with the compressor.

If a tyre pressure of 2 bar, approx. 29 psi, still cannot be achieved, the tyre damage is too severe. Contact Service.


Stowing the Mobility System

1. Unscrew the filling hose for the sealant cylinder from the wheel.
2. Unscrew the compressor's connecting hose from the sealant cylinder.

3. Connect the filling hose for the sealant cylinder to the free connection on the sealant cylinder.
This stops the rest of the sealant escaping from the cylinder.
4. To prevent soiling of the luggage compartment, wrap the empty sealant cylinder.
5. Secure the Mobility System in the vehicle.


Distributing the sealant

Immediately drive approx. 5 km, approx. 3 miles, so that the sealant is evenly distributed inside the tyre.

 Do not exceed a speed of 80 km/h, approx. 50 mph. If possible, maintain a speed of at least 20 km/h, approx. 12 mph. ◀


Adjusting the tyre pressure


1. Stop in a suitable place.
2. Screw the connecting hose from the compressor directly to the tyre valve.
3. Insert the connector into the socket inside the vehicle.
4. Adjust the tyre pressure to 2.5 bar, approx. 36.3 psi. Additionally, with the engine running:
 - ▶ To increase pressure: with the engine running or the ignition switched on, switch on the compressor. Switch the compressor off briefly to gauge the current tyre pressure.
 - ▶ To reduce pressure: press the deflation button on the compressor.

 If the tyre inflation pressure is not maintained, drive the vehicle again, see Spreading the sealant. Subsequently repeat steps 1 to 4.

If a tyre pressure still cannot be maintained, the tyre damage is too severe. Contact Service. ◀

Continuing the journey


 Do not exceed the maximum permissible speed of 80 km/h, approx. 50 mph, otherwise there is a risk of accidents. ◀

 Reinitialise the Run Flat Indicator, see page 93 for further notes.

Have the faulty tyre and the sealant cylinder of the Mobility System replaced as soon as possible. ◀

Snow chains

Only certain fine-link snow chains have been tested by BMW, classified as safe for use and recommended. Service is able to provide details. Fit snow chains in pairs and only to the rear wheels. When fitting, comply with the snow chain manufacturer's instructions. When snow chains are in use, do not exceed 50 km/h, approx. 30 mph.

 Do not initialise the Run Flat Indicator if snow chains are fitted, as the instrument might issue an incorrect reading.

When driving with snow chains, you may find it helpful to activate DTC temporarily, see page 91. ◀

Engine compartment

Vehicle equipment

This chapter describes all standard equipment, national market versions and optional equipment featured in the series. As such, it includes

descriptions of equipment that might not be available in a vehicle on account of the optional equipment selected, for example, or the national-market version. This also applies for safety-relevant functions and systems.

Important accessories in the engine compartment



- 1 Petrol engine: coolant expansion tank, see page 241.
Diesel engine: the expansion tank is on the opposite side of the vehicle
- 2 Vehicle Identification Number
- 3 Filler neck for washer fluid for headlight cleaning system and windscreen washer, see page 74
- 4 Jump-starting connection, see page 257
- 5 Engine oil filler cap, see Adding engine oil, page 240
- 6 Dipstick for engine oil, see Checking engine oil level with dipstick

Engine compartment lid



Do not work on the car unless you possess the necessary technical knowledge. If you are not familiar with the applicable guidelines, have work on the vehicle carried out solely by Service, otherwise there is a risk of subsequent damage and associated safety risks if the work is not carried out properly. ◀

Releasing



Pull the lever.

Opening



! To avoid damage, make sure that the wiper arms are against the windscreen before you open the engine compartment lid. Only open the engine compartment lid when the engine has cooled down, as otherwise injuries can occur. ◀

Press the release lever and open the lid.

Closing



Close the engine compartment lid from a height of about 40 cm, approx. 16 in, with some momentum. It must be clearly heard to engage.

! To avoid injuries, ensure that the closing area of the engine compartment lid is unobstructed.

If you notice during the journey that the engine compartment lid has not been properly closed, stop the car at the earliest possible moment and close it correctly. ◀

Engine oil

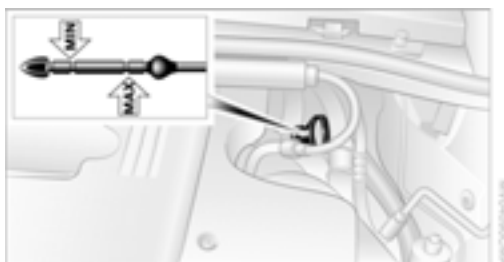
General guidance

Engine oil consumption is determined by driving style and operating conditions. For example, engine oil consumption increases significantly if a vehicle is driven in a sporty style.


Therefore, the oil level should be checked regularly every time the vehicle is refuelled.

Checking engine oil level with dipstick

1. Park the vehicle on a level surface with the engine at operating temperature, i.e. after driving continuously for at least 10 km or 6 miles.
2. Switch off the engine.
3. After about 5 minutes pull out the dipstick **6** and wipe it dry with a non-linting cloth, paper towel or similar.
4. Carefully push the dipstick fully into its tube, then pull it out again.
The oil level must be between the two marks on the dipstick.



The quantity of oil between the two dipstick marks is approx. 1 litre, approx. 2 pints.

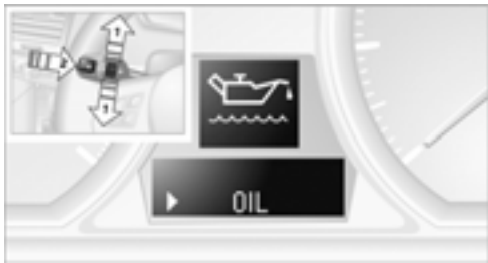
 Do not add oil beyond the upper dipstick mark. Adding too much oil will harm the engine. Have the vehicle checked without delay. ◀

Checking engine oil level electronically

Your car is equipped with an electronic oil-level monitor.

For a precise measurement and display of the oil level, it is necessary that the engine be at operating temperature, i.e. after uninterrupted driving for at least 10 km, approx. 6 miles. You can have the oil level displayed while you are driving, or while the vehicle is at a standstill on a level surface and the engine is running.


Display in the instrument cluster



1. Press button **1** in the turn indicator lever up or down repeatedly until the appropriate symbol is shown in the display, accompanied by the word "OIL".
2. Press button **2**.
The oil level is checked and the reading displayed.

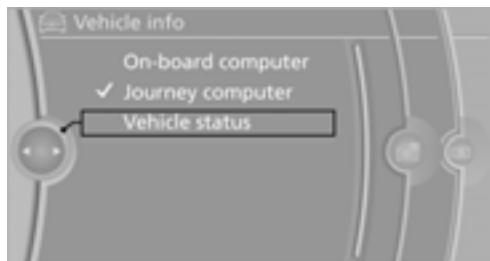
Possible displays



- 1 Oil level OK
- 2 Oil level is being checked.
This can take about 3 minutes if the car is at a standstill on a level surface, or about 5 minutes if the vehicle is in motion.
- 3 Oil level down to minimum:
At the earliest opportunity, add up to 1 litre, approx. 2 pints of engine oil, see also Adding engine oil on page 240.
- 4 Oil level too high.
 Adding too much oil will harm the engine. Have the vehicle checked without delay. ◀
- 5 The oil level sensor is defective.
Do not add engine oil. You can continue your journey. Note the newly calculated distance remaining to the next oil service, see page 243. Have the system checked as soon as possible.

Display via iDrive

1. "Vehicle information"
2. "Vehicle status"




3. "Engine oil level"



Possible messages

- ▷ "Engine oil level OK"
- ▷ "Measurement not possible at this time."
- ▷ "Measuring engine oil level...":
This process can take approx. 3 minutes when the vehicle is stationary with the engine running and approx. 5 minutes when the vehicle is moving.
If the engine oil has been topped up, determining the oil level can take up to 30 minutes.
- ▷ "Engine oil level below minimum. Add one litre!"
At the earliest opportunity, add a maximum of 1 litre, approx. 2 pints, of engine oil, see also Adding engine oil below.
If the oil level is indicated as below minimum, immediately add engine oil, as otherwise engine damage can occur.

- ▷ "Engine oil level too high! Have this checked.":

 Have the car examined immediately, otherwise too much oil could result in engine damage. ◀


- ▷ "Measurement inactive. Have this checked.":


Do not add engine oil. Before continuing your journey, note the newly calculated distance remaining to the next oil service, see Next Service indicator on page 82. Have the system checked as soon as possible.


Adding engine oil




Only add the maximum amount of 1 litre, approx. 2 pints, of oil when you are instructed to do so by a message on the control display.


 Top up the oil level within the next 200 km, approx. 120 miles, otherwise the engine may suffer damage. ◀

 Topping up with too much oil can result in engine damage; have the car examined immediately. ◀

 Keep oils and greases, etc. out of the reach of children and comply with the relevant warnings on the containers. Otherwise, these products may pose health risks. ◀

Oil grades for topping up

 Do not use oil additives, as they could lead to engine damage. ◀

 When selecting an engine oil, check that it belongs to one of the SAE viscosity classes 0W-40, 0W-30, 5W-40 or 5W-30; oth-

erwise malfunctions or engine damage could result. ◀

Engine oil quality is a decisive factor for your engine's service life.

Some oil grades might not be available in all countries.

Approved oil grades

Petrol engine

BMW Longlife-01

BMW Longlife-01 FE

BMW Longlife-04

Diesel engine

BMW Longlife-04

Please contact Service if you require more information about approved oil grades.

Alternative oil grades

Approved oils are not available, you can top up with up to 1 litre, up to 2 pints, of an oil meeting the following specification:

Petrol engine

ACEA A3/B4

Diesel engine

ACEA C3


Oil change


Oil changes must be carried out by Service only.

BMW recommends 

Coolant

Coolant consists of equal quantities of water and coolant additive. Not all commercially available additives are suitable for your BMW. Service can provide details of which additives are suitable.


 Use only suitable additives, otherwise the engine could suffer damage. As these additives are hazardous to health, observe the notes on the containers. ◀

 When disposing of coolant additives, comply with the relevant environmental protection regulations. ◀

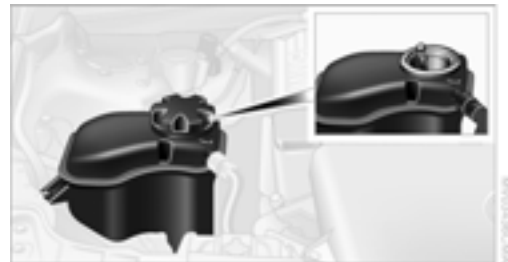
Coolant temperature

If the coolant and thus the engine overheat, a warning lamp lights up. A message appears on the Control Display.

Checking coolant level

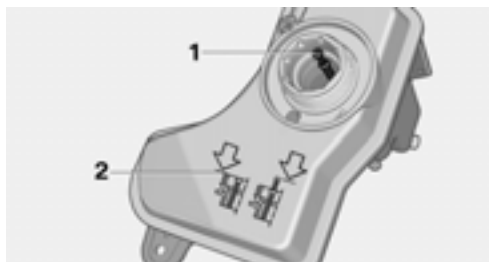
 Do not open up the cooling system while the engine is hot, otherwise you may scald yourself on the escaping coolant steam. ◀

1. Do not open the engine compartment lid until the engine has cooled down.
2. Turn the cap on the expansion tank slightly anticlockwise until it starts to open, then allow the pressure to escape before opening it fully.



3. The level indicator **1** in the filler neck shows the level of coolant. The coolant level is cor-

rect when it is between the relevant arrows on the container **2**.



4. If necessary, slowly top up to correct level but do not overfill.
5. Turn the cap to close until it is heard to click.
6. Have the cause of coolant loss rectified as soon as possible.

Maintenance

Vehicle equipment

This chapter describes all standard equipment, national market versions and optional equipment featured in the series. As such, it includes descriptions of equipment that might not be available in a vehicle on account of the optional equipment selected, for example, or the national-market version. This also applies for safety-relevant functions and systems.

BMW Maintenance System



The BMW Maintenance System informs you of necessary maintenance measures and helps you to maintain both the roadworthiness and operating safety of your vehicle.

Condition Based Service CBS


Sensors and advanced algorithms take account of the varying conditions in which your BMW is used. Condition Based Service uses these to determine current and future servicing requirements. The system provides you with an opportunity to tailor the scope of maintenance work to your personal standards, so that your BMW will always be reliably operational.

On the control display, you can have the remaining distances and times for selected maintenance tasks as well as any legally prescribed dates displayed to you individually, see page 82:

- ▷ Engine oil
- ▷ Brake pads: separately for front and rear
- ▷ Brake fluid
- ▷ Vehicle check
- ▷ Statutory vehicle inspections, depending on national requirements


Service data in the remote control

Your vehicle continuously stores information relating to service requirements in the remote control as the vehicle is being driven. Your Service advisor can read out this data from the remote control unit, and propose an optimised maintenance approach. Whenever you take your car in for servicing you should therefore hand your service advisor the remote control unit that you last used.

 Make sure that the date is always set correctly, see page 86, otherwise the effectiveness of Condition Based Service CBS is not assured. ◀

Service

More information on items that need regular maintenance and on the scope of maintenance required can be found on page 279.

 BMW recommends that you have maintenance and repair work carried out by Service.

Make sure that maintenance work is confirmed after it has been carried out. These entries are evidence that your BMW has been serviced regularly and correctly. ◀

Socket for on-board diagnosis OBD



There is an OBD socket on the driver's side for checking components that critically influence the composition of emissions.

Emissions



The warning lamp lights up:

Vehicle emissions are higher than normal. You can continue your journey.

Have the vehicle checked as soon as possible.

The warning lamp flashes:

Engine malfunction that can damage the catalytic converter. You can continue your journey, but moderate your speed and exercise due caution. Have the vehicle checked without delay.

Recycling

The very design of your vehicle incorporates a recycling-friendly concept that extends to both the production methods used and the choice of materials.

BMW recommends returning your vehicle at the end of its service life to a recycling point specified by the BMW Group. In doing this, you will be making an active contribution towards protecting resources and the environment. The regulations concerning the returning of end-of-life vehicles may vary from country to country. You can obtain more information on the Internet at www.bmw.com or from Service.


General care

Vehicle equipment

This chapter describes all standard equipment, national market versions and optional equipment featured in the series. As such, it includes descriptions of equipment that might not be available in a vehicle on account of the optional equipment selected, for example, or the national-market version. This also applies for safety-relevant functions and systems.


Washing the vehicle

Notes

 If you use steam-jet cleaners or high-pressure cleaners, make sure you maintain an adequate distance and a maximum temperature of 60 °C/140 °F.

Insufficient distance and excessive pressure or temperature cause damage or initial damage which can lead to lasting damage.

Comply with the instructions for the steam-jet cleaner or high-pressure cleaner. ◀

 Do not direct high-pressure cleaners at the vehicle for sustained periods and maintain a distance of at least 30 cm, approx. 12 in, from sensors, Park Distance Control, for example. ◀


Remove foreign bodies such as leaves from the windscreen area with the engine compartment on a regular basis.

Wash the vehicle more frequently in winter.

Substantial deposits of dirt and road salt can cause damage to the vehicle.


Automatic car washes and car wash tunnels

Notes

 In car washes with high pressures and jets at window level, drops of water may penetrate the vehicle. ◀

Please pay attention to the following:

- ▷ Use textile car washes or facilities with soft brushes whenever possible, in order to avoid paint damage.
- ▷ Wheels and tyres must not be damaged by handling equipment.
- ▷ Fold wing mirrors in, see page 54, otherwise, they could be damaged due to the width of the car.
- ▷ Disable the rain sensor, see page 74, to prevent unwanted windscreen wiping.
- ▷ On convertibles, do not treat the convertible top with wax. Make sure that a programme without wax or a special convertible programme is available.
- ▷ Ensure the rear window wiper is in its original position, deactivate and protect against damage. If necessary, request the appropriate protective measures from the car wash operator.
- ▷ Remove additional attachment parts, e.g. spoilers or telephone aerial, if they could be damaged.
- ▷ Remove the rod aerial.
- ▷ Insert the remote control into the ignition lock.

 Avoid car washes where the guide rails are higher than 10 cm, approx. 4 in, as otherwise the car body may be damaged. ◀

Entering a wash tunnel

To ensure that the vehicle can roll through a wash tunnel, please comply with the following steps:

Manual gearbox:

1. Select neutral;
2. Release the handbrake, see page 66.
3. Switch the engine off.
4. Insert the remote control into the ignition lock.

Automatic gearbox:

1. Insert the remote control into the ignition lock, even if the car is equipped with Comfort Access.
2. Engage transmission or selector lever position N.
3. Release the handbrake, see page 66.
4. Switch the engine off.
5. Insert the remote control into the ignition lock.

Sports automatic transmission with double clutch:

1. Insert the remote control into the ignition lock, even if the car is equipped with Comfort Access.
2. Engage transmission or selector lever position N.
3. Release the handbrake, see page 66.
4. Switch the engine off.
5. Insert the remote control into the ignition lock.

Transmission position P is engaged:

- ▷ Automatically after approx. 30 minutes
- ▷ When the remote control is removed from the ignition lock

Headlights

Do not rub them when dry or use caustic or abrasive cleaning agents.

Soak dirt, e.g. dead insects, with shampoo and rinse with water.

Thaw out ice deposits using de-icer; do not use a scraper.

After washing the vehicle



After washing the car, drive it briefly and apply the brakes to dry them out; this is necessary to prevent reduced braking effect and to avoid corrosion of the brake discs. ◀

Remove all residue from the windows to avoid reduced visibility due to streaking and to reduce wiper noise and wiper blade erosion.

Vehicle care

Care products

BMW recommends that you use BMW cleaning and care products as these have been tested and approved.



Observe the instructions on the pack. When cleaning the interior of the vehicle, open doors or windows. Only use products intended for vehicle cleaning. Cleaning agents can contain hazardous substances or constitute a health risk. ◀

Vehicle paint

Regular care contributes to driving safety and helps retain the value of your vehicle. Environmental influences in areas where air pollution is high or natural dirt contamination such as tree sap or pollen is common can affect vehicle paintwork. Adapt the frequency and scope of vehicle care accordingly.

Remove aggressive substances such as spilled fuel, oil, grease or bird droppings without delay, otherwise the paintwork could be damaged or discoloured.

Leather care

Remove dust from the leather more frequently with a cloth or vacuum cleaner.

Dust and road dirt works its way into the pores and folds, promoting abrasion and causing the leather surface to become prematurely brittle.

To prevent colouring, for example through clothes, apply care to leather approximately every two months.

As soiling is more obvious on light-coloured leather, this must be cleaned more often.

Use leather care products as dirt and grease gradually attack the leather's protective layer.


Appropriate care products are available from the Service Centre.

Upholstery fabric care

Vacuum regularly.

In the event of heavy soiling, e.g. stains caused by beverages, use a soft sponge or a lint-free microfibre cloth in combination with suitable interior cleaning agents.

Clean upholstery fabrics across a large area, right up to the seams. Avoid rubbing them excessively.

 Open bur fasteners on trousers or other garments could damage the seat upholstery. Ensure that bur fasteners are fastened. ◀

Care for special parts

Alloy wheels

When cleaning the vehicle, only use neutral wheel cleaner with a pH value between 5 and 9. Do not use rough cleaning agents or steam-jet cleaners hotter than 60 °C/140 °F. Comply with the manufacturer's instructions.

Aggressive, acidic or alkaline cleaning agents can destroy the protective layers of adjacent parts such as the brake discs.

Chrome surfaces

Carefully clean parts such as the radiator grille or, door handles with plenty of water and shampoo additive, especially whenever the car is exposed to the effects of road salt.

Rubber parts

Treat only with water or with rubber care products.

Do not use any silicone-based care products for treating rubber seals, as these could otherwise be damaged and become a source of noise.

Fine wood trims

Clean fine wood trim and wooden parts with a damp cloth only. Then rub dry with a soft cloth.

Plastic parts


These include:

- ▷ Imitation leather surface finishes
- ▷ Roof lining
- ▷ Lamp lenses
- ▷ Glass cover of instrument cluster
- ▷ Parts sprayed matt black
- ▷ Painted interior parts

Clean with a microfibre cloth.


If necessary, moisten the cloth with water.

Do not soak the roof lining.

 Do not use alcohol-based or solvent-based cleaning agents such as nitro-celulose thinner, cold cleaner, petrol etc. as these can damage the top surfaces. ◀

Seat belts


Dirt on the seat belts will prevent them from being retracted properly and will therefore impair safety.

 Do not dry clean the seat belts, otherwise the fabric may be destroyed. ◀

Clean using mild soap only in the fastened position.

Only retract seat belts when dry.

Carpets and floor mats

 Make sure that pedal functions are not impaired during travel by floor mats, carpets or other objects.

Do not place additional floor mats on top of existing floor mats or other objects.

Only use floor mats which have been approved for use with the vehicle; these must be securely fastened in place.

If you remove floor mats, for cleaning for example, make sure that you fasten them securely back in place. ◀

Floor mats can be removed from the vehicle for cleaning.

When replacing the floor mats, ensure they are firmly secured.

If the floor mats are very dirty, clean with a microfibre cloth and water or textile cleaner. Rub in the direction of travel otherwise felting may occur.

Sensors/cameras

To clean sensors or cameras, use a cloth moistened with a small amount of a glass cleaning product.

Displays/screens

To clean displays, use an antistatic microfibre cloth.



Do not use any chemical or abrasive domestic cleaning agents. Keep all liquids and any moisture away from the set. Surfaces or electrical components might otherwise be corroded or damaged. When cleaning, avoid excessive pressure and do not use any abrasive materials as these may cause damage. ◀

Care of the convertible top

The appearance and service life of the convertible top depend on proper care and operation.

Please observe the following instructions:

- ▷ Do not fold or store the convertible top in the convertible top compartment when it is wet or frozen, as otherwise water stains, mould or mildew marks and abrasions may result.
- ▷ If any water stains should develop on the roof lining, remove them using a microfibre cloth and interior cleaner.
- ▷ If the vehicle is parked in an enclosed space for an extended period of time, provide for sufficient aeration.
- ▷ Because of their corrosive properties, remove bird droppings from the convertible top and the rubber seals immediately.



Do not use stain remover, paint thinner, solvent, petrol or similar to remove stains from the convertible top. These can damage the rubber coating. Inappropriate care and

cleaning can damage the convertible top and convertible top seams and cause leaks. ◀

In the event of severe soiling, use a special convertible top cleaning agent.

Follow the instructions for use provided by the manufacturer.

After three to five washes, treat the convertible top with a waterproofing agent.

Trailer tow hitch with removable ball head

Keep the ball head and the fixture clean. Grease or oil bearings, sliding surfaces and balls with non-resinous grease or oil at regular intervals.

Remove the ball head and insert the cover plug into the fixture before cleaning with a steam-jet cleaner or high-pressure cleaner. Do not clean the ball head with a steam-jet cleaner or high-pressure cleaner.

Placing the vehicle in storage

Your Service Centre advises you what you should pay attention to if the vehicle has been left stationary for more than three months.

Replacing parts

Vehicle equipment

This chapter describes all standard equipment, national market versions and optional equipment featured in the series. As such, it includes descriptions of equipment that might not be available in a vehicle on account of the optional equipment selected, for example, or the national-market version. This also applies for safety-relevant functions and systems.


On-board toolkit

The toolkit is underneath the floor mat in the luggage compartment.

Wiper blades




1. Swing the wiper arm clear and hold it in this position.
2. Squeeze latching spring together, arrows 1, and swing the wiper blade out, arrow 2.
3. Pull the wiper blade forward and remove it from the locking element.


 In order to avoid damage, make sure that the wiper arms are against the windscreen before you open the engine compartment. ◀


Lights and bulbs


Lights and bulbs are an important aspect of driving safety. They should, therefore, be handled carefully. BMW recommends that any such work that you are not familiar with or that is not described here be entrusted to a Service Centre.

 Do not touch the glass of a new bulb with the fingers, because even slight amounts of dirt or grease will then be burned into the bulb and reduce its working life. Use a clean tissue, cloth or similar, or hold the bulb by its base. ◀

A replacement bulb set can be obtained from Service.


 To avoid the risk of burns, allow bulbs to cool before replacing them. ◀

 When working on electrical systems, always begin by switching off the consumer in question, as otherwise short-circuits could result. Observe any instructions supplied by the bulb manufacturer, to avoid the risk of injury or damage when changing bulbs. ◀

 Please seek advice from Service when changing bulbs for which instructions are not provided here. ◀

Light-emitting diodes LED

Controls, displays and other equipment items inside your vehicle have light-emitting diodes behind a cover as their light source. These LEDs resemble conventional lasers and are classified by law as Class 1 light-emitting diodes.

 Do not remove the covers or expose the eyes directly to the unfiltered light source for several hours at a time, as this could cause irritation to the retina. ◀


Headlight lenses

Condensation might form on the inside of the headlight lenses in cool or damp weather. When the lights are switched on, the condensation disappears after a short time. There is no need to replace the headlight lenses.

If the headlamps do not clear despite driving with them switched on and the build-up of moisture continues to increase, e.g. if there are drops of water inside the lights, have them checked by Service.

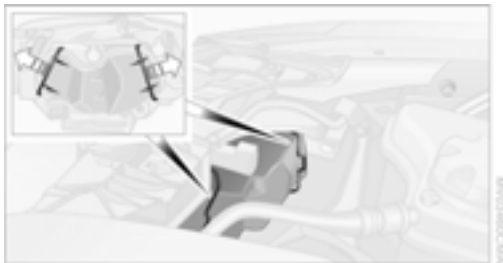
Xenon headlights

These bulbs have a very long service life and are highly unlikely to fail. If a xenon headlight fails nonetheless, switch on the fog lights and continue the journey with great care, provided that local legislation does not prohibit this.


 All work on the xenon lighting system, including bulb replacement, must be carried out by Service. In view of the high electrical voltages present, there is a risk of potentially fatal accidents if work is performed inexpertly. ◀

Removing the headlight cover

1. Pull the wire clips over the latches, see arrows, and swing them aside.



2. Fold out the headlight cover.


 Proceed with care when fitting the headlight cover and make sure that both wire clips are securely locked in place, as otherwise leaks and thus damage can occur on the headlight system. ◀

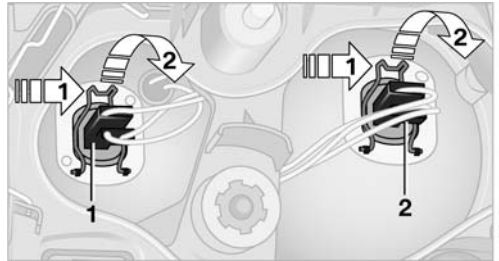
Installation is the reverse of the removal procedure.

Halogen headlights

Halogen low-beam and high-beam headlights

H7 bulb, 55 watts

 The H7 bulb is pressurised, so wear goggles and gloves. There is otherwise a risk of injury if the bulb is damaged. ◀



The illustration shows the headlight on the right-hand side.

- 1 High-beam headlights
 - 2 Low-beam headlights
1. Remove the headlight cover.
 2. Disconnect the plug from the light.
 3. Push the wire bracket to the side out of the mounting, arrow 1, and fold it down, arrow 2.
 4. Remove the bulb.
 5. Insert the new bulb with the notch pointing upwards.
 6. Fold up the wire bracket and lock it.
 7. Connect the plug.
 8. Install the headlight cover.

Side and parking lights

W5W bulb, 5 watts

1. Remove the headlight cover.



The illustration shows the headlight on the right-hand side.

2. Pull out the bulb holder.
3. Pull out the bulb and change it.
4. Reinsert the bulb holder.
5. Install the headlight cover.

Xenon headlights

Side lights, parking lights and daytime driving lights

H8 bulb, 35 watts



The illustration shows the headlight on the right-hand side.

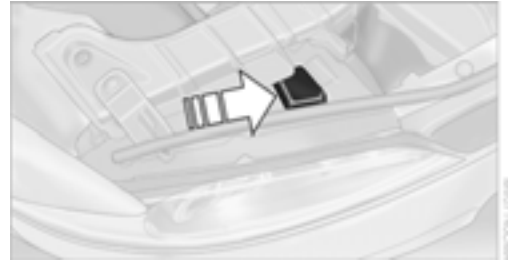
1. Remove the headlight cover.
2. Turn the bulb, see arrow, and remove.
3. Pull off the connector and replace the bulb.
4. Plug in the connector, insert the bulb fitting and turn in the opposite direction as far as it will go.
5. Install the headlight cover.

Cornering light

H3 bulb, 55 watts

The illustration shows the headlight on the right-hand side.

1. Remove the upper headlight cover using a screwdriver to press the retaining lugs to the side.



2. Turn the bulb fitting, see arrow, and remove.



3. Push the bulb out of the fitting and pull off the connector.
4. Replace the bulb and insert the connector.
5. Insert the bulb fitting and turn in the opposite direction as far as it will go.
6. Install the headlight cover.

Front turn indicators

PY21W bulb, 21 watts

The bulb for the turn indicator lamp can be changed via the cover in the wheel arch.



1. Turn the relevant wheel inwards.
2. Use a coin to turn both retainers of the cover as far as they will go to the left, arrows 1, and remove the cover.
3. Turn the bulb holder, arrow 2, to the left and remove it.
4. Press the bulb in slightly and turn to the left, take out and change it.
5. Insert the bulb fitting and turn to the right to lock into place.
6. Fit the cover by positioning it at the bottom and then turn both retainers as far as they will go to the right.

Side turn indicators

W5W bulb, 5 watts

1. Take hold of the rear edge of the light with your fingertip and push forwards, arrow 1, then pull out and off, arrow 2.

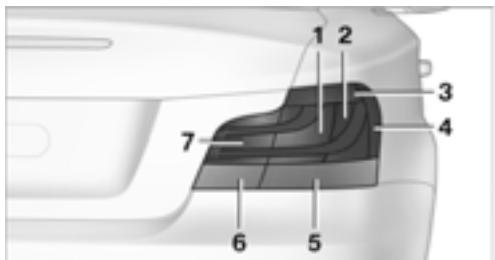


2. To remove the bulb holder, turn it to the left whilst lifting the retaining tab at the same time.
3. Pull out the bulb and change it.

To fit a bulb, slot it in at the front and push in at the back.

Rear lights with halogen headlights

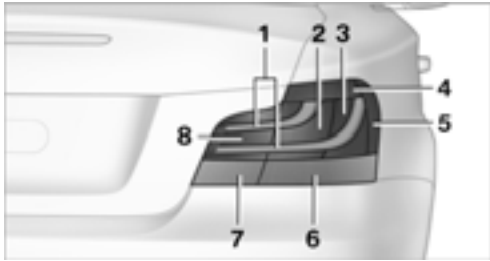
- ▷ Flashing turn indicators: PY21W bulb, 21 watts
- ▷ Reversing lights: W16W bulb, 16 watts
- ▷ Brake lights: P21W bulb, 21 watts
- ▷ Rear fog lights: H21W bulb, 21 watts



- 1 Inner brake light/tail light
- 2 Outer brake light/parking lamp/tail light
- 3 Reflector
- 4 Side rear reflector
- 5 Flashing turn indicators
- 6 Reversing light
- 7 Rear fog light/tail light

Rear lights with xenon headlights

- ▷ Flashing turn indicators: PY21W bulb, 21 watts
- ▷ Reversing lights: W16W bulb, 16 watts
- ▷ Brake lights: P21W bulb, 21 watts
- ▷ Rear fog lights: H21W bulb, 21 watts



- 1 Parking light and tail light, LED
- 2 Inner brake light
- 3 Outer brake light
- 4 Reflector
- 5 Side rear reflector
- 6 Flashing turn indicators
- 7 Reversing light
- 8 Rear fog light

Replacing rear lights

Outer brake light



The outer brake light is accessible by means of a single fitting.

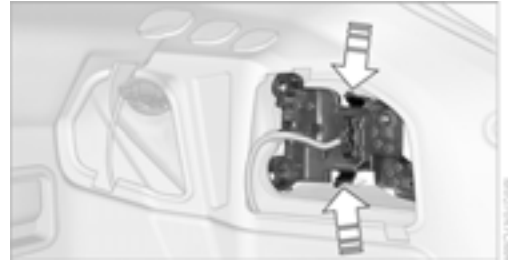
The illustration shows the right-hand side of the vehicle.

1. Remove the cover from the side panel of the luggage compartment.
2. Turn the bulb holder to the left, see arrow, and remove it.
3. Press the bulb in slightly and turn to the left, take out and change it.
4. Insert the bulb fitting and turn in the opposite direction as far as it will go.
5. Reattach the cover.



Xenon headlights feature LED parking lamps/tail lights. After replacing the bulb, ensure that the bulb fitting has correctly snapped into place, as otherwise the parking/tail light might not function. ◀

Inner brake light, turn indicator, reversing light and rear fog light



The bulbs are integrated in a bulb holder.

1. Remove the cover from the side panel of the luggage compartment.
2. Unfasten the bulb holder by pressing the clips, see arrows, and remove.
3. Brake light, indicator and rear fog light: Press the bulb in slightly and turn to the left, take out and change it.
4. Reversing light: pull the bulb out of the fitting and replace it.
5. Reattach the bulb holder so that it clicks into place.
6. Reattach the cover.

License plate lights, centre brake light and parking lamp/tail light

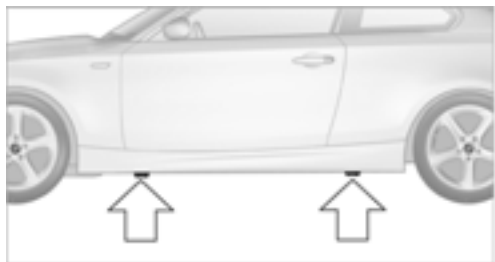
These lights use LED technology. In the event of a fault, please contact Service.

Changing a wheel



Suitable tools for changing a wheel can be obtained as accessories from your BMW Service. ◀

Jacking points



The jacking points are at the positions shown in the illustration.

Thief-proof wheel studs



- 1 Wheel stud for adapter
- 2 Adapter, in the luggage compartment under the floor mat

Removing

1. Attach the adapter **2** to the wheel stud.
2. Unscrew wheel stud **1**.

After inserting, remove the adapter again.



If you lose the adapter, contact Service. ◀

Car battery

Maintenance

The battery needs no routine maintenance whatsoever, in other words the quantity of acid it contains will normally last for the full operating life of the battery in temperate climates. Service will gladly advise you on all matters relating to batteries.

Changing the battery



Only use vehicle battery types that have been approved by your vehicle manufacturer, otherwise damage to the vehicle may occur or systems or functions may not be available, either entirely or partly. ◀

After battery replacement, have your battery registered in the vehicle by your Service so all convenient functions are unrestrictedly available.

Recharging the battery

Note



Do not connect battery chargers to the sockets in the vehicle that were installed prior to delivery. Doing this could damage the battery. ◀

General guidance

Ensure the battery is adequately charged in order to preserve the full operating life of the battery.

In the following cases, it may be necessary to charge the battery:

- ▷ For frequent short journeys.
- ▷ If the vehicle is not used for long periods of more than one month.

Terminals for jump starting

Only charge the battery via the connections in the engine compartment; the engine must be switched off. Connections, see Jump-starting on page 257.

Charger


Using a charger helps to ensure that the battery is charged sufficiently even if you frequently drive short distances, for example. Chargers that have been designed specifically for your vehicle and the vehicle electrical system are available from Service.

Power failure

After a temporary power failure, the functions of certain equipment items may be restricted and require reinitialising. Likewise, individual settings may have been lost and need to be reprogrammed:

- ▷ Time and date
These values must be updated, see page 84.
- ▷ Radio
Stations must be memorised again, see page 164.
- ▷ Navigation system
Wait until the system starts, see page 154.
- ▷ Glass roof
Under some circumstances, only the roof can be raised. The system must be initialised. Please contact Service.
- ▷ Seat and mirror memory
The positions must be memorised again, see page 52.
- ▷ Active steering
The system briefly initialises itself automatically while the vehicle is being driven. During this period, the system is disabled, see page 95.

Disposing of old batteries

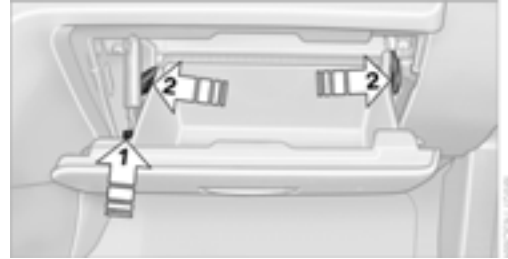
 After changing the battery, have the old one disposed of by Service or take it to a collection point. Batteries filled with acid should be transported and stored upright. Protect batteries against falling over when in transit. ◀

Fuses



Do not repair blown fuses or replace them with fuses with different colours or ampere ratings, otherwise overloaded electrical wires can cause a fire in the vehicle. ◀

In glove box



Access to the fuse box:

1. Open the glove box.
2. Release the shock absorber element, arrow 1, from the lower recess by pressing it forwards.
3. Unlock the glove box by pressing both lugs, arrows 2, and fold downwards.

Plastic tweezers are provided on the distributor box.

You will find details of the fuse assignment beside the distributor box.

Spare fuses can be obtained from Service.

After replacing a fuse, press the glove box upwards until it snaps into place and reattach the shock absorber element.

Mutual aid

Vehicle equipment

This chapter describes all standard equipment, national market versions and optional equipment featured in the series. As such, it includes descriptions of equipment that might not be available in a vehicle on account of the optional equipment selected, for example, or the national-market version. This also applies for safety-relevant functions and systems.


Emergency call

Conditions

- ▷ Business mobile phone provision: this equipment specification permits you to make an emergency call even if a mobile phone has not been logged on in the vehicle.
- ▷ BMW Assist is activated.
- ▷ Radio readiness is switched on.
- ▷ The BMW Assist system is logged in to a mobile communications network supported by BMW Assist.
- ▷ The emergency call system is functional.

Only press the SOS button in an emergency.

Even if BMW Assist emergency calls are not supported, it may be possible to make an emergency call using a public telephone number. This will depend upon the mobile phone network you are using, as well as regulations in force in the country of use.

 For technical reasons, the emergency call function cannot be ensured in certain unfavourable conditions. ◀

User contract

When your user contract for BMW Assist expires, the BMW Assist system can be deactivated by Service without you having to take your vehicle to a workshop.

You cannot make BMW Assist emergency calls once the system has been deactivated.

The BMW Assist system can be re-enabled under certain circumstances once a new contract has been taken out with BMW Service.

Initiating an emergency call

1. Briefly press the cover flap to open it.



2. Press and hold down the SOS button until the LED in the button lights up.
 - ▷ LED lit: emergency call activated.

If an abort prompt appears on the control display, the emergency call may be aborted. If the situation permits, wait in the car until voice contact has been established.
 - ▷ The LED flashes once the connection to the emergency call number has been established.

In the case of a BMW Assist emergency call, the data required to decide on the rescue measures to be taken is transferred to the emergency call centre, e.g. the current position of your vehicle if this can be determined. If calls from the emergency call centre to your vehicle go unanswered, rescue measures are initiated immediately.

- ▷ If the LED is flashing but the emergency call centre cannot be heard over the hands-free system, it is possible that the hands-free system is malfunctioning. The emergency call centre may still be able to hear you, however.

Initiating an emergency call automatically

If certain requirements are met, an emergency call is automatically initiated after a serious accident. An automatic emergency call will not be hindered by pressing the SOS button.

BMW Roadside Assistance

BMW Roadside Assistance is available via the telephone around the clock in most countries. It can provide assistance in the event of a breakdown.

In vehicles equipped with BMW Assist or BMW TeleServices you can establish contact with BMW Roadside Assistance for breakdown assistance directly via iDrive, see page 216.

First aid pouch

Certain items in the first aid pouch have a limited useful life. Check the expiry dates of the contents regularly and replace any items that have expired.



The first-aid pouch is located on the right-hand side of the luggage compartment in a storage compartment.


Warning triangle



The warning triangle is located in a bracket in the luggage area lid. Press the tabs to take it out.


Jump-starting

If the car's own battery is flat, your BMW's engine can be started by using two jump leads from another vehicle's battery. In the same way, you can help another vehicle to start. Use only leads with fully insulated terminal clamps.


 Do not touch any electrically live parts when the engine is running, or a fatal accident may occur. Do not depart from the procedure described below, otherwise personal injury could result or one or both vehicles sustain damage. ◀

Preparations

1. Check whether the battery of the other vehicle has a voltage of 12 Volt and approximately the same capacity in Amp/h. This should be printed on the battery.
2. Switch off the engine of the donor vehicle.
3. Switch off any consumers in both vehicles.

 The bodies of the two vehicles must not make contact, otherwise there is the risk of a short-circuit. ◀

Connecting the jump leads

 Connect the jump leads in the correct order, so that no sparks which could cause injury occur at the battery. ◀

Your BMW has a so-called jump-starting connection in the engine compartment which acts as the battery's positive terminal, see also Engine compartment overview on page 237. The cap is marked with +.

1. Pull the cap of the BMW jump-starting connection up to remove.



2. Connect a terminal clamp on the positive/+ jump lead to the positive battery terminal or a jump-starting connection on the donor vehicle.
3. Connect the second terminal clamp on the positive/+ jump lead to the positive battery terminal or a jump-starting connection on the vehicle to be started.
4. Connect a terminal clamp on the negative/- jump lead to the negative battery terminal or the engine or body earth connection on the donor vehicle.

Your BMW has a special nut to act as the body earth or negative terminal.



5. Connect the second terminal clamp on the negative/- jump lead to the negative battery terminal or a ground/earth connection on the engine or body of the vehicle to be started.

Starting the engine

1. Start the engine of the donor vehicle and allow it to run for a few minutes at a slightly increased idle speed.
2. Start the engine of the other vehicle in the customary way.
If an initial attempt to start the engine fails, wait several minutes until the flat battery has been recharged to a slightly greater degree.
3. Allow the engines to run for a few minutes.
4. Disconnect the jump leads in the opposite order from that in which they were originally attached.

Check the battery if necessary and have it recharged.



Do not use the spray products sold as starting aids. ◀

Tow-starting, towing away

Using the towing eye

The screw-in towing eye must always be carried on the vehicle. It can be screwed in at the front or rear of the BMW.

It is stored in the toolkit underneath the floor mat in the luggage compartment, see page 249.



Use only the towing eye supplied with the car, and make sure that it is screwed in fully and is tight. Only use the towing eye for towing on roads. Avoid lateral loads on the towing eye, e.g. do not raise the vehicle at the towing eye. Otherwise, the towing eye and the vehicle could sustain damage. ◀

Access to screw thread

Rectangular cover in bumper:

Press on the arrow symbol on the cover.


Front



Rear



Being towed

 Make sure that the ignition is switched on, see page 62, as otherwise low-beam headlights, rear lights, turn indicators and wind-screen wipers would not be available.

If the electrical system fails, do not attempt to tow-start or tow away the car. The electrical steering-wheel lock cannot be disengaged and the car is not steerable. Jump-starting, see page 257.

Servo assistance is not available when the engine is not running. The steering and brakes will require extra effort to operate. Active steering is not active and more extensive steering wheel movements will be required. ◀


Manual gearbox

Gear lever in idle position.


Automatic transmission

Selector lever in position N.


Change the selector lever position, see page 67.

 Do not exceed a towing speed of 70 km/h or 40 mph and a towing distance of 150 km or 90 miles, otherwise the automatic gearbox could be damaged. ◀

Sports automatic transmission with double clutch


 Make sure that the parking lock P is not engaged, otherwise the rear wheels will be blocked.

If you are using the car wash function, see page 246, please note that after approx. 30 minutes the parking lock P will engage automatically, thereby blocking the rear wheels. In the event of an electrical fault or if the vehicle has to be towed for more than approx. 20 minutes, you will need to unlock the parking lock manually, see page 71. ◀


 Do not exceed a maximum towing speed of 50 km/h or 30 mph and a maximum towing distance of 50 km or 30 miles, otherwise the gearbox could be damaged. ◀

BMW recommends using a breakdown truck with loading platform to transport your vehicle, or towing with the rear axle raised.

Towing methods


 Do not raise the car at the towing eye or by body or suspension components, otherwise it could be damaged. ◀

With towbar

 The towing vehicle must not be lighter than the towed vehicle, otherwise it may be impossible to maintain control. ◀


The towing eyes of both vehicles should be on the same side. If it is impossible to avoid attaching the towbar at an angle, note the following:

- ▷ Towbar clearance may be restricted when cornering.
- ▷ The towbar will generate lateral forces if it is attached offset.

 Only attach the towbar to the towing eyes. Attaching the towbar to other parts of the vehicle can result in damage. ◀

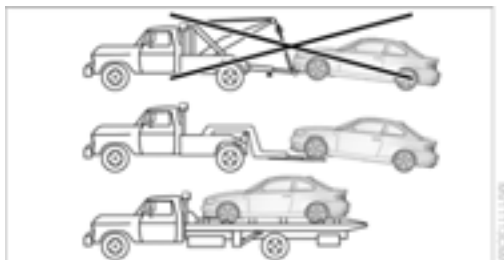
With tow rope

Ensure that the tow rope is taut when the towing vehicle moves off.

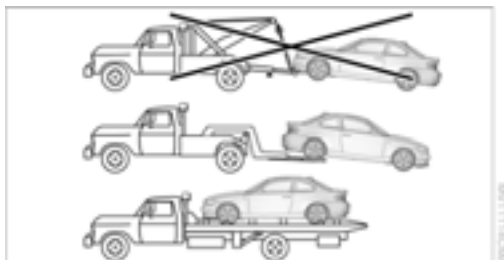
 For towing, use nylon ropes or tapes, as these will help avoid sudden tensile loads. Only attach the tow rope to the towing eyes. Attaching the tow rope to other parts of the vehicle can result in damage. ◀

With breakdown truck

Manual transmission and automatic transmission:




Sports automatic transmission with double clutch:



Have the BMW transported by a breakdown truck with a hoisting frame, or hoisted onto a loading platform.

Tow-starting

 Do not tow-start the vehicle if the electrics fail, otherwise the electric steering lock will refuse to unlock and you will not be able to steer the vehicle. ◀

If possible, you should use jump leads instead of tow-starting to start the engine, see

page 257. On vehicles with catalytic converters, tow-starting should only be used if the engine is cold; on vehicles with automatic transmission and sports automatic transmission with double clutch, it is not possible to tow-start the engine.

1. Switch on the hazard warning flashers, comply with local regulations.
2. Switch on the ignition, see page 62.
3. Engage 3rd gear.
4. Depress the clutch before beginning to be towed. When the car is moving, gradually release the clutch. Press the clutch down fully again as soon as the engine has started.
5. Halt in a suitable place, remove the towbar or tow rope and switch off the hazard warning flashers.
6. Have the vehicle checked.



Reference

This section contains technical data, the short commands for the voice control system, and the index, which is your quickest way of finding the information you want.

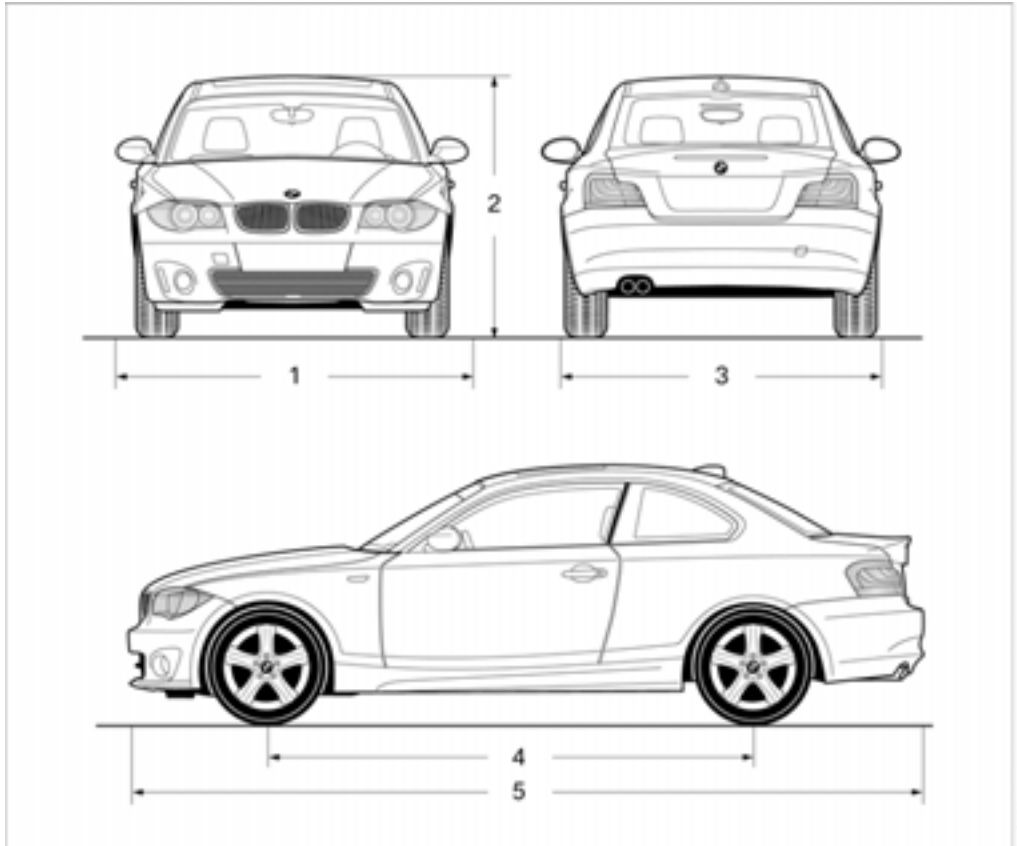
Technical data

Vehicle equipment

This chapter describes all standard equipment, national market versions and optional equipment featured in the series. As such, it includes descriptions of equipment that might not be available in a vehicle on account of the optional equipment selected, for example, or the national-market version. This also applies for safety-relevant functions and systems.

Dimensions

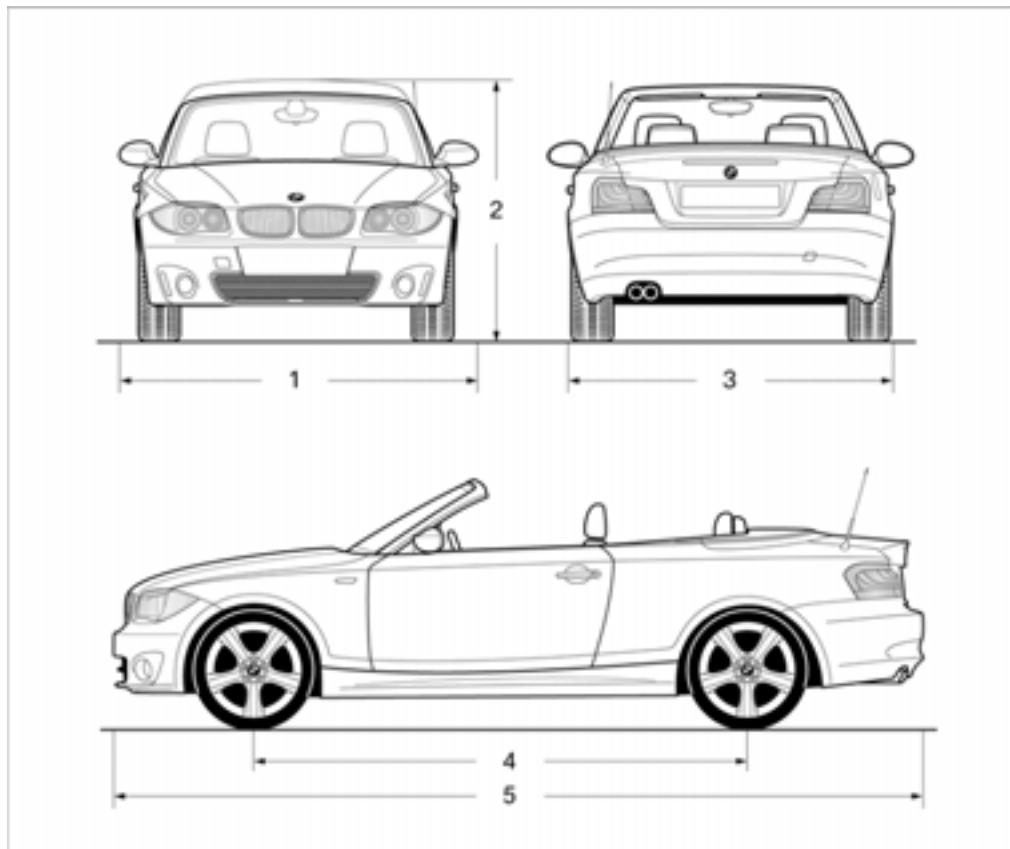
Coupé



- | | |
|---|--|
| 1 Vehicle width, with exterior mirrors:
1919 mm, approx. 75.5 in | 4 Wheelbase: 2660 mm, approx. 105 in |
| 2 Vehicle height: 1423 mm, approx. 56 in
Vehicle height, 135i: 1408 mm, approx. 55.5 in | 5 Vehicle length: 4360 mm, approx. 172 in |
| 3 Vehicle width, without exterior mirrors:
1748 mm, approx. 69 in | |

Smallest turning circle dia.: 10.7 m, approx. 35 ft 1 in

Convertible



- | | |
|--|---|
| 1 Vehicle width, with exterior mirrors:
1919 mm, approx. 75.5 in | 4 Wheelbase: 2660 mm, approx. 105 in |
| 2 Vehicle height: 1411 mm, approx. 55.5 in
Vehicle height, 135i: 1392 mm, approx. 55 in | 5 Vehicle length: 4360 mm, approx. 172 in |
| 3 Vehicle width, without exterior mirrors:
1748 mm, approx. 69 in | |

Smallest turning circle dia.: 10.7 m, approx. 35 ft 1 in

Weights

Coupé

		120i	125i	135i	118d	120d	123d
Kerb weight, ready for road, with 75 kg, approx. 165 lb, load, tank 90 % full, without optional extras							
▶ Manual gearbox	kg	1395	1450	1530	1425	1445	1490
	(lb)	(3075)	(3195)	(3375)	(3140)	(3185)	(3285)
▶ Automatic transmission	kg	1415	1470	–	1450	1455	1495
	(lb)	(3120)	(3240)		(3195)	(3210)	(3295)
▶ Sports automatic transmission with double clutch	kg	–	–	1545	–	–	–
	(lb)			(3405)			
Permitted gross weight							
▶ Manual gearbox	kg	1760	1815	1895	1790	1810	1850
	(lb)	(3880)	(4000)	(4175)	(3945)	(3990)	(4080)
▶ Automatic transmission	kg	1780	1835	–	1815	1820	1860
	(lb)	(3925)	(4045)		(4000)	(4010)	(4100)
▶ Sports automatic transmission with double clutch	kg	–	–	1910	–	–	–
	(lb)			(4210)			
Front axle load limit	kg	845	900	945	870	870	910
	(lb)	(1860)	(1985)	(2085)	(1920)	(1920)	(2005)
Rear axle load limit	kg	995	1005	1030	1005	1010	1015
	(lb)	(2195)	(2215)	(2270)	(2215)	(2225)	(2240)
Roof load	kg	75	75	75	75	75	75
	(lb)	(165)	(165)	(165)	(165)	(165)	(165)
Luggage compartment capacity	Litres	370	370	370	370	370	370
	(cu ft)	(13.1)	(13.1)	(13.1)	(13.1)	(13.1)	(13.1)

Convertible

		118i	120i	125i	135i	118d	120d	123d
Kerb weight, ready for road, with 75 kg, approx. 165 lb, load, tank 90 % full, without optional extras								
▶ Manual gearbox	kg	1520	1505	1585	1665	1530	1590	1635
	(lb)	(3350)	(3320)	(3495)	(3670)	(3375)	(3505)	(3605)
▶ Automatic transmission	kg	1535	1535	1615	–	1545	1600	1650
	(lb)	(3385)	(3385)	(3560)		(3405)	(3525)	(3640)
▶ Sports automatic transmission with double clutch	kg	–	–	–	1685	–	–	–
	(lb)				(3715)			
Permitted gross weight								
▶ Manual gearbox	kg	1885	1870	1950	2030	1895	1955	2000
	(lb)	(4155)	(4120)	(4300)	(4475)	(4175)	(4310)	(4410)

		118i	120i	125i	135i	118d	120d	123d
▷ Automatic transmission	kg (lb)	1900 (4190)	1900 (4190)	1980 (4365)	-	1910 (4210)	1965 (4430)	2015 (4440)
▷ Sports automatic transmission with double clutch	kg (lb)	-	-	-	2050 (4520)	-	-	-
Front axle load limit	kg (lb)	860 (1895)	875 (1930)	910 (2005)	940 (2070)	885 (1950)	905 (1995)	925 (2040)
Rear axle load limit	kg (lb)	1090 (2405)	1080 (2380)	1095 (2415)	1120 (2470)	1090 (2405)	1110 (2445)	1115 (2460)
Roof load	kg (lb)	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Luggage compartment capacity	Litres (cu ft)	260 (9.1)	260 (9.1)	260 (9.1)	260 (9.1)	260 (9.1)	260 (9.1)	260 (9.1)
With rear seat backrests folded down	Litres (cu ft)	305 (10.7)	305 (10.7)	305 (10.7)	305 (10.7)	305 (10.7)	305 (10.7)	305 (10.7)

Towing a trailer

Coupé

		120i	125i	118d	120d	123d
Towing loads according to EU operating permit. Note and comply with different values in certain countries. Your Service Centre will have details of possible increases.						
Unbraked	kg	680	700	690	720	740
	(lb)	(1500)	(1545)	(1520)	(1585)	(1630)
Braked on gradients up to 12%	kg	1200	1200	1200	1200	1200
	(lb)	(2645)	(2645)	(2645)	(2645)	(2645)
Braked on gradients up to 8%	kg	1200	1200	1200	1200	1200
	(lb)	(2645)	(2645)	(2645)	(2645)	(2645)
Trailer nose weight	kg	75	75	75	75	75
	(lb)	(165)	(165)	(165)	(165)	(165)
Rear axle load limit	kg	1105	1115	1115	1120	1125
	(lb)	(2435)	(2460)	(2460)	(2470)	(2480)
Permitted gross weight						
▶ Manual gearbox	kg	1835	1890	1865	1885	1930
	(lb)	(4045)	(4165)	(4110)	(4155)	(4255)
▶ Automatic transmission	kg	1855	1910	1890	1895	1935
	(lb)	(4090)	(4210)	(4165)	(4175)	(4265)

Convertible

		118i	120i	125i	118d	120d	123d
Towing loads according to EU operating permit. Note and comply with different values in certain countries. Your Service Centre will have details of possible increases.							
Unbraked	kg	670	680	700	690	720	740
	(lb)	(1475)	(1500)	(1545)	(1520)	(1585)	(1630)
Braked on gradients up to 12%	kg	1200	1200	1200	1200	1200	1200
	(lb)	(2645)	(2645)	(2645)	(2645)	(2645)	(2645)
Braked on gradients up to 8%	kg	1200	1200	1200	1200	1200	1200
	(lb)	(2645)	(2645)	(2645)	(2645)	(2645)	(2645)
Trailer nose weight	kg	75	75	75	75	75	75
	(lb)	(165)	(165)	(165)	(165)	(165)	(165)
Rear axle load limit	kg	1195	1195	1210	1195	1220	1230
	(lb)	(2635)	(2635)	(2670)	(2635)	(2690)	(2710)
Permitted gross weight							
▷ Manual gearbox	kg	1960	1945	2025	1970	2030	2075
	(lb)	(4320)	(4290)	(4465)	(4345)	(4475)	(4575)
▷ Automatic transmission	kg	1975	1975	2055	1985	2040	2090
	(lb)	(4355)	(4355)	(4530)	(4375)	(4495)	(4610)

Filling capacities

	Litres (Imp. units)	Note
Fuel tank:		Fuel grade: page 229
▷ Petrol engine	approx. 53 (11.7 gal)	
Including a reserve of	approx. 8 (1.8 gal)	
▷ Diesel engine	approx. 51 (11.2 gal)	
Including a reserve of	approx. 6.5 (1.4 gal)	
Windscreen washer system including headlight washers	approx. 6 (10.6 pints)	Further details: page 74

Short commands for the voice control system

Vehicle equipment

This chapter describes all standard equipment, national market versions and optional equipment featured in the series. As such, it includes descriptions of equipment that might not be available in a vehicle on account of the optional equipment selected, for example, or the national-market version. This also applies for safety-relevant functions and systems.

General guidance

Instructions for the voice control system, see page 24.

To have possible commands read out: ›Voice commands‹

The following short commands are supported for vehicles with voice control system. They are not available if your equipment only supports voice control of mobile phones.

Practical short commands

Function	Command
Calling up music collection	›Music collection‹
Calling up tone	›Tone‹
Calling up settings	›Settings‹
Calling up on-board monitor	›On board computer‹
Calling up contacts	›Contacts‹
Displaying phone book	›Phonebook‹
Calling up services	›Services‹
Calling up BMW Services	›B M W Services‹
Calling up ConnectedDrive	›Connected Drive‹
Calling up home address	›Home address‹
Calling up destination input	›Destination input‹
Calling up route guidance	›Guidance‹

CD/Multimedia

CD/DVD player

Function	Command
Selecting a track	›Track ...‹ e.g. track 5 or ›C D track ...‹ e.g. CD track 5
Playing back CD	›C D on‹
Selecting CD	›Select C D‹
Selecting a CD and track	›C D ... track ...‹ e.g. CD 3, track 5
Calling up the CD and Multimedia menu	›C D and multimedia‹
CD and DVD	›C D‹
Showing entertainment details in the split screen	›Entertainment details‹

Music collection

Function	Command
Finding music, calling up menu	›Music search‹
Calling up current playback	›Current playback‹
Calling up music collection	›Music collection‹
Playing music collection	›Music collection on‹
Playing most frequently played tracks	›Top fifty‹

External devices

Function	Command
Calling up external devices	›External devices‹
Calling up Bluetooth devices	›Bluetooth‹
AUX front	›AUX‹

Tone

Function	Command
Calling up tone	›Tone‹

Radio

FM

Function	Command
Calling up a station directly	›Station ...‹ e.g. the station Bayern 3
Calling up a frequency	›Frequency ... megahertz‹ e.g. 93.5 Megahertz or frequency 93.5
Calling up radio	›Radio‹
Calling up FM station	›F M‹
Calling up manual search	›Manual search‹
Selecting a frequency range	›Select frequency‹
Calling up a station	›Select station‹

AM

Function	Command
Calling up a frequency	›Frequency ... kilohertz‹ e.g. frequency 753 Kilohertz or 753 Kilohertz
Calling up AM station	›A M‹
Calling up manual search	›Manual search‹

DAB

Function	Command
Calling up a station directly	›Station ...‹ e.g. the station B5 plus
Calling up digital radio	›D A B‹
Switching on digital radio	›D A B on‹

Memorised stations

Function	Command
Calling up saved stations	›Saved stations‹
Choosing a memorised station	›Select saved station‹
Selecting a memorised station	›Saved station ...‹ e.g. memorised station 2

Phone

Function	Command
Dialling a phone number	›Dial number‹
Calling up the 'Telephone' menu	›Telephone‹
Displaying phone book	›Phonebook‹
Redialling	›Redial‹
Displaying incoming calls	›Received calls‹
Displaying list of messages	›Messages‹
Showing Bluetooth devices	›Bluetooth‹

Office

Function	Command
Calling up the Office menu	›Office‹
Displaying Office today	›Office today‹
Displaying contacts	›Contacts‹
Displaying messages	›Messages‹
Displaying the calendar	›Calendar‹
Displaying tasks	›Tasks‹
Displaying reminders	›Reminders‹

Contacts

Function	Command
Selecting names	›Select name‹
Calling up contacts	›Contacts‹
My contacts	›My contacts‹
New contact	›New contact‹

Navigation

General guidance

Function	Command
Navigation menu	›Navigation‹
Calling up destination input	›Destination input‹
Entering an address	›Destination input‹
Calling up route guidance	›Guidance‹
Starting route guidance	›Start guidance‹
Exiting route guidance	›Stop guidance‹
Calling up home address	›Home address‹
Calling up route criteria	›Route criteria‹
Calling up course of a route	›Route profile‹
Switching on spoken instructions	›Switch on spoken instructions‹
Repeating spoken instruction	›Repeat spoken instructions‹
Switching off spoken instructions	›Switch off spoken instructions‹
Displaying address book	›Address book‹
Displaying last destinations	›Last destinations‹
Calling up traffic information	›Traffic information‹
Points of interest	›Points of interest‹

Map

Function	Command
Displaying map	›Map‹
Map pointing towards north	›Map north oriented‹
Map pointing in direction of travel	›Map indicating direction of travel‹
Map in perspective	›Map perspective‹
Automatic map scaling	›Map automatic scaling‹
Changing the scale	›Map scale‹
Scale ... metres	›Map scale ... metres‹ e.g. map scale 100 metres
Scale ... kilometres	›Map scale ... kilometres‹ e.g. map scale 5 kilometres

Split screen settings

Function	Command
Split screen	›Switch on splitscreen‹
Switching off split screen	›Switch off splitscreen‹
Adapting split screen	›Split screen display‹
Split screen, current position	›Splitscreen current position‹
Split screen, map pointing towards north	›Splitscreen map north oriented‹
Split screen, pointing in direction of travel	›Splitscreen map direction of travel oriented‹
Split screen, perspective	›Splitscreen perspective‹
Scaling split screen automatically	›Splitscreen automatic scaling‹
Split screen, extended junction zoom	›Splitscreen 3 D exit roads‹
Split screen scale ... metres	›Splitscreen scale ... metres‹ e.g. split screen scale 100 metres
Split screen scale ... kilometres	›Splitscreen scale ... kilometres‹ e.g. split screen scale 5 kilometres
Split screen, highlight traffic information	›Split screen, Traffic situation‹
Split screen, on-board computer	›Splitscreen on board computer‹
Split screen, journey computer	›Splitscreen Journey computer‹

Route guidance with intermediate destinations

Function	Command
New destination input	›Destination input‹
Trip list	›Saved journeys‹

ConnectedDrive or BMW Services

Function	Command
Calling up BMW Services	›B M W Services‹
Calling up ConnectedDrive	›Connected Drive‹
Calling up BMW Online	›B M W Online‹
Calling up the Internet	›Internet‹

Vehicle info

Function	Command
Calling up on-board monitor	›On board computer‹
Calling up the journey computer	›Journey computer‹
Calling up vehicle info	›Vehicle information‹
Calling up the vehicle status	›Vehicle status‹

Settings

Vehicle

Function	Command
Calling up the main menu	›Main menu‹
Calling up settings	›Settings‹
Calling up options	›Options‹
Control display settings	›Control display‹
Calling up time and date	›Time and date‹
Calling up language and units	›Language and units‹
Calling up limit speed	›Speed‹
Calling up light	›Lights‹
Calling up door locking	›Door locks‹
Calling up profiles	›Profiles‹

Equipment

Function	Command
Calling up climate	›Climate‹

Maintenance overview

Vehicle equipment

This chapter describes all standard equipment, national market versions and optional equipment featured in the series. As such, it includes descriptions of equipment that might not be available in a vehicle on account of the optional equipment selected, for example, or the national-market version. This also applies for safety-relevant functions and systems.

General guidance

The BMW Maintenance System informs you regarding the current service requirements, see page 243.

The following overview shows which servicing work is performed as part of which type of service.

Standard routines

Maintenance work

Check messages in Check Control

Check indicator and warning lamps

Engine oil

Maintenance work

Replace engine oil and oil filter

Handbrake:

Check function of brake engagement

Air conditioning or automatic air conditioning:

Replace the microfilter

Maintenance work

Petrol engine:

At every 2nd engine oil change:

Replace spark plugs

At every 2nd engine oil change

Intake muffler:

Replace air-filter element; with heavier dust deposit, reduce change interval

Diesel engine:

At every 2nd engine oil change

Change fuel filter; change more frequently if fuel quality is poor

Reset service display in line with workshop guideline

Front brake

Maintenance work

Change brake pads, clean brake calliper gaps

Brake discs:

Check surface and thickness.

Reset service display in line with workshop guideline

Rear brake

Maintenance work

Change brake pads, clean brake calliper gaps

Brake discs:

Check surface and thickness.

Handbrake:

Check function

Reset service display in line with workshop guideline

Brake fluid

Maintenance work

Change brake fluid

Active pedestrian protection system:

Check the expiry date on the pneumatic springs of the engine compartment.

Reset service display in line with workshop guideline

Vehicle check

Maintenance work

Check operation of horn, headlight flasher and hazard warning flashers

Check instrument and inscription lighting and heater blower

Check the lights

Seat belts:

Check condition of belt, function of automatic reel, belt locking action and belt buckle

Check windscreen wiper and washer system

Convertible:

Initiate rollover protection system via diagnosis interface.

NB: open convertible top first

Tyres:

Check tread depth, tread wear pattern, exterior condition and inflation pressure

BMW Mobility System:

Check the expiry date on the sealant cylinder.

Initialise the Run Flat Indicator

Battery with indicator lamp:

Check battery.

Steering oil container:

Check the oil level

Maintenance work

Steering components:

Check clearance, leak-tightness, damage and wear

Check coolant level and concentration

Windscreen washer:

Check fluid level

Brake lines and connections:

Check for leaks, damage and incorrect location

Underbody, including all visible parts:

Check for damage, corrosion, leak-tightness, incl. the leak-tightness of shock absorbers and assembly of springs in extended state

Check – by test-driving – operating safety of: brakes, steering, shock absorbers, transmission

Reset service display in line with workshop guideline

Subject to additional charges

Replacement work, new parts, operating fluids and wear materials are subject to additional charges. For more information, please contact Service.

From A-Z

Index

A

- Acceleration assistant, see Launch Control 72
- Accessories, see Vehicle equipment 5
- Activated charcoal filter 110
- Active steering 95
- Adaptive Headlights 102
- Additives
 - coolant 241
 - engine oil 241
- Address in navigation
 - entering 136
- Air, drying, see Cooling function 110
- Airbags 96
 - deactivating 56
 - reactivating 57
 - safe seated position 47
 - warning lamp 97
- Airbag switch 56
- Air conditioner 107
- Air distribution
 - automatic 108
- Air flow rate 109
- Airing, see Ventilation 110
- Air outlets 107
- Air pressures, checking, see Tyre pressures 230
- Air vents, see Ventilation 110
- Alarm system 36
 - avoiding false alarms 37
 - interior movement detector 37
 - switching off alarm 37
 - tilt alarm sensor 37
- Album information for music 178
- Albums on music selection 177
- Alloy wheels 247
- ALL programme 109
- All-season tyres, see Winter tyres 232
- Antifreeze
 - coolant 241
 - washer fluid 74
- Anti-lock Brake System ABS 91
- Anti-theft alarm system, see Alarm system 36
- Appointments, see Calendar 209
- Approved engine oils 241
- Apps 222
- Aquaplaning 124
- Armrest, see Centre armrest 112
- Arrival time
 - on-board computer 79
- Ashtray 114
- Assistance systems, see Dynamic Stability Control DSC 91
- AUC Automatic Air Recirculation Control 109
- Audio 158
 - controls 158
 - switching on/off 158
 - tone settings 158
 - volume control 158
- Automatic
 - air distribution 108
 - air volume 108
 - cruise control 75
 - driving lights control 100
- Automatic air-conditioning system 107
 - automatic air distribution 108
- Automatic Air Recirculation Control AUC 109
- Automatic car washes 245
- Automatic DAB/FM switchover 166
- Automatic-dim mirrors 54
- Automatic high beams and low beams, see High beam assistance 103
- Automatic lights
 - see High beam assistance 103
 - see Welcome lights 101
- Automatic low-beam headlights, see High beam assistance 103
- Automatic start/stop function 64
- Automatic TeleService Call 221
- Automatic transmission with Steptronic 66
 - selector lever lock 67
 - shiftlock 67
 - towing away 258
 - tow-starting 258
- AUTO programme for the automatic air-conditioning system 108
- AUX-IN port 180
- Available services 222
- Average fuel consumption 79
 - setting units of measurement 82
- Average speed 79
- Avoiding false alarms 37
- Axle load limits, see Weights 267

B

Backing up the music collection **178**

Backrests, see Seats **48**

Backrest width adjustment **49**

Back seats, see Rear seats
– adjusting head restraints **50**

Balance, tone settings **159**

Bar, see Tow-starting and towing away **259**

Bass, tone settings **158**

Battery **254**
– disposal **40, 255**
– jump-starting **257**
– power failure **255**
– recharging **254**

Battery change
– remote control for vehicle **39**

Being towed **259**

Belts, see Seat belts **52**

Belt tensioner, see Seat belts **52**

Biodiesel, see Diesel engine **229**

Bluetooth Audio
– disconnecting the audio connection **185**
– unpairing the device **186**
– What to do if... **186**

Bluetooth audio **183**
– pairing the device **184**
– playback **185**

BMW Assist **215**

BMW Info **208**

BMW Live **218**

BMW Maintenance System **243**

BMW Mobility System **233**

BMW Online **217**

BMW Roadside Assistance **257**

BMW Services
– updating **222**

BMW TeleServices **215**

Bottle holder, see Drinks holders **113**

Brake assist, see Dynamic Brake Control **91**

Brake discs **125**
– brakes **122**
– running in **122**

Brake fluid
– next Service indicator **82**

Brake lights
– bulb changing **253**

Brake pads, running in **122**

Brakes
– ABS **91**
– BMW Maintenance System **243**
– disc brakes **125**
– handbrake **65**
– next Service indicator **82**
– running in **122**

Brake system **122**
– BMW Maintenance System **243**
– running in **122**

Braking
– safe braking **124**

Breakdown recovery **216**

Breakdown Service, see BMW Roadside Assistance **257**

Bulb changing, see Lights and bulbs **249**

Button for starting engine **62**

Buttons on the steering wheel **11**

C

Calendar **209**
– displaying appointments **209**
– selecting a calendar day **209**

Call
– accepting **195**
– muting the microphone **197**
– rejecting **196**
– terminating **196**
– with a number of participants **196**

Calling up saved trips **144**

Can holder, see Drinks holders **113**

Capacity
– fuel tank, see Filling capacities **271**

Capacity of the luggage compartment **267**

Car
– recycling **244**
– stopping **64**

Caravan-towing, see Towing a trailer **127**

Care
– cushions and fabric covers **247**

Care of the convertible top **248**

Car key, see Integrated key/remote control **30**

Car phone
– installed position, see Centre armrest **112**

Car washes **245**

Catalytic converter, see Hot exhaust system **124**

CBS Condition Based Service **243**

CD, playing audio tracks **168**

CD player **168**
– controls **158**
– fast forward, reverse **170**
– random play **169**
– switching on/off **158**
– tone settings **158**
– track selection **168**
– volume control **158**

Central locking **31**
– Comfort Access **38**
– from inside **34**
– from outside **31**

Centre armrest **112**

Centre brake light, bulb changing **253**

Centre console, see Around the centre console **14**

Changing a wheel **253**

- Changing bulbs [249](#)
 - see Lights and bulbs [249](#)
 - Changing scale in navigation [150](#)
 - Changing the battery [254](#)
 - Changing trips [144](#)
 - Chassis number, see Engine compartment [237](#)
 - Check Control [86](#)
 - Checking engine oil level [238](#), [239](#)
 - Child restraint systems [56](#)
 - Child seat mountings, ISOFIX [58](#)
 - Child seats [56](#)
 - Chrome parts [247](#)
 - Chrome polish [247](#)
 - Cigarette lighter [114](#)
 - socket [114](#)
 - Cleaning headlights [74](#)
 - washer fluid [74](#)
 - Cleaning the windows
 - capacity, reservoir [271](#)
 - Cleaning your BMW, see General care [245](#)
 - Clearance warning, see Park Distance Control PDC [90](#)
 - Clock [77](#)
 - 12h/24h format [85](#)
 - setting time [84](#)
 - setting time and date [85](#)
 - Closing
 - from inside [34](#)
 - Clutch, running in [122](#)
 - Coat hooks [113](#)
 - Cold start, see Starting the engine [63](#)
 - Comfort/convenience, see Around the centre console [14](#)
 - Comfort Access [38](#)
 - changing the battery [39](#)
 - Compartment for remote control, see Ignition lock [62](#)
 - Components and accessories, see Vehicle equipment [5](#)
 - Computer, see iDrive [18](#), [79](#)
 - Condensation, see Car parked [125](#)
 - Configuring settings, see Personal Profile [30](#)
 - Confirmation signals for locking/unlocking the vehicle [33](#)
 - Congestion
 - displaying traffic information [151](#)
 - see Avoiding sections of route [147](#)
 - ConnectedDrive [215](#)
 - Connecting a music player, see AUX-IN port [180](#)
 - Connecting a music player, USB audio interface [181](#)
 - Connecting an iPod, see AUX-IN port [180](#)
 - Connecting an iPod, see USB audio interface [181](#)
 - Connecting an MP3 player, see AUX-IN port [180](#)
 - Connecting the MP3 player, see USB audio interface [181](#)
 - Connecting vacuum cleaner, see Connecting electrical appliances [114](#)
 - Consumption, see Average fuel consumption [79](#)
 - Consumption display, see Fuel gauge [78](#)
 - Contacts [204](#)
 - deleting [206](#), [214](#)
 - export/import [214](#)
 - new contact [205](#)
 - Control centre, see iDrive [18](#)
 - Control display [18](#), [19](#)
 - Control display, see iDrive
 - switching off/on [19](#)
 - Controller, see iDrive [18](#)
 - Controls and displays [10](#)
 - Convenient operation
 - windows [32](#)
 - windows with Comfort Access [38](#)
 - with Comfort Access [38](#)
 - Convenient starting, see Starting the engine [63](#)
 - Convertible
 - convertible top [42](#)
 - rollover protection system [98](#)
 - wind deflector [45](#)
 - Convertible top
 - convenient opening [32](#)
 - Conveying children [56](#)
 - Conveying children safely [56](#)
 - Coolant [241](#)
 - checking level [241](#)
 - topping up [241](#)
 - Coolant temperature [241](#)
 - Cooling, maximum [108](#)
 - Cooling fluid, see Coolant [241](#)
 - Cornering light [102](#)
 - Cornering lights, see Adaptive Headlights [102](#)
 - Country codes DVD [170](#)
 - Country of destination for navigation [136](#)
 - Country-specific information via BMW Online [153](#)
 - Course of route [147](#)
 - Cross-hairs in navigation [141](#)
 - Cruise control [75](#)
 - Cup holder, see Drinks holders [113](#)
 - Current fuel consumption [79](#)
 - Currently playing
 - external devices [183](#)
 - on music collection [176](#)
- ## D
- DAB
 - station search [165](#)
 - Dashboard lighting, see Instrument lighting [105](#)
 - Data, technical
 - dimensions [265](#)
 - filling capacities [271](#)
 - weights [267](#)
 - Data memory [6](#)

- Data transmission [222](#)
 - Date
 - setting [86](#)
 - setting format [86](#)
 - Daytime driving lights [101](#)
 - DBC Dynamic Brake Control [91](#)
 - Deactivating/activating
 - Bluetooth connection [191](#)
 - Deadlocking, see Locking [32](#)
 - Deadlocks [31](#)
 - Defrosting and demisting windows [109](#)
 - Defrosting windows [109](#)
 - Defrosting windscreen, see Defrosting windows [109](#)
 - Defrost setting, see Defrosting windows [109](#)
 - Deleting a trip [144](#)
 - Deleting music collection [179](#)
 - Demisting, windows [109](#)
 - Destination address
 - entering [136](#), [142](#)
 - Destination in navigation
 - entering [136](#)
 - entering via map [141](#)
 - entering via voice commands [142](#)
 - home address [139](#)
 - manual input [136](#)
 - Destination input via BMW Assist [141](#)
 - Diesel fuel [229](#)
 - Diesel particle filter [124](#)
 - Digital clock [77](#), [84](#)
 - Digital radio DAB/DMB [165](#)
 - Dimensions [265](#)
 - Direction instructions, see Spoken instructions [148](#)
 - Direction instructions, see Voice output [148](#)
 - Display, see Control display [18](#)
 - Displaying contact photos [206](#)
 - Displaying points of interest [141](#)
 - Display lighting, see Instrument lighting [105](#)
 - Displays, see Instrument cluster [12](#)
 - Displays and controls [10](#)
 - Disposal
 - battery for remote control [40](#)
 - of coolant [241](#)
 - vehicle battery [255](#)
 - Distance, see On-board computer [79](#)
 - Distance remaining to service, see Next Service indicator [82](#)
 - Distance to destination, see On-board computer [79](#)
 - Door key, see Integrated key/remote control [30](#)
 - Door locking, confirmation signals [33](#)
 - Door locks [34](#)
 - Doors, manual operation [34](#)
 - Downhill gradients [125](#)
 - Draught-free ventilation [110](#)
 - Drinks holders [113](#)
 - Drive mode [70](#)
 - Drive-off assistant [93](#)
 - Driving Dynamics Control [71](#)
 - Driving hints [122](#)
 - Driving lights, see Side lights/low-beam headlights [100](#)
 - Driving lights control, automatic [100](#)
 - Driving stability control systems [91](#)
 - Driving through water [124](#)
 - Dry air, see Cooling function [110](#)
 - DSC Dynamic Stability Control [91](#)
 - DTC Dynamic Traction Control [92](#)
 - indicator lamps [92](#)
 - DTMF suffix dialling [197](#)
 - DVD
 - country codes [170](#)
 - settings [171](#)
 - video playback [170](#)
 - DVD menu [171](#)
 - DVD player, see CD player [168](#)
 - DVD video [170](#)
 - Dynamic Brake Control DBC [91](#)
 - Dynamic route guidance [153](#)
 - Dynamic Stability Control DSC [91](#)
 - Dynamic Traction Control DTC [92](#)
 - indicator lamps [92](#)
- ## E
- EBV Electronic Brake Force Distribution [91](#)
 - Electrical fault
 - door lock [34](#)
 - fuel filler flap [228](#)
 - Electric steering wheel lock [62](#)
 - Electric windows [40](#)
 - see Windows [40](#)
 - Electronic Brake Force Distribution [91](#)
 - Electronic oil level check [239](#)
 - Electronic Stabilisation Programme ESP, see Dynamic Stability Control DSC [91](#)
 - E-mail [209](#)
 - Emergency call [256](#)
 - Emergency operation, see Manual operation
 - door lock [34](#)
 - fuel filler flap [228](#)
 - transmission lock, automatic transmission [68](#)
 - Emergency release of the luggage area lid [36](#)
 - Emergency Service, see BMW Roadside Assistance [257](#)

- Engaging drive, see
 - Transmission positions [69](#)
- Engaging selector lever
 - positions, see Transmission positions [69](#)
- Engine
 - running in [122](#)
 - starting [63](#)
 - starting, Comfort Access [38](#)
 - stopping [64](#)
- Engine compartment [237](#)
- Engine compartment lid [237](#)
- Engine coolant, see
 - Coolant [241](#)
- Engine oil
 - adding [240](#)
 - additives [241](#)
 - alternative oil grades [241](#)
 - approved engine oils [241](#)
 - BMW Maintenance System [243](#)
 - checking level [238](#)
 - intervals between changes, see Next Service indicator [82](#)
- Engine start, see Starting the engine [63](#)
- Enject button, see buttons on the CD/DVD player [158](#)
- Entering a destination by town or city name [136](#)
- Entering a home address [205](#)
- Entering a junction for navigation [137](#)
- Entering an address for navigation [136](#), [142](#)
- Entering a street for navigation [137](#)
- Entering a town/city for navigation [136](#)
- Entering the postcode for navigation [137](#)
- Equalizer, tone settings [159](#)
- ESP Electronic Stabilisation Programme, see Dynamic Stability Control DSC [91](#)
- Excluding motorways in navigation [146](#)
- Exhaust system, see Hot exhaust system [124](#)
- Exterior mirrors [53](#)
 - automatic heating [54](#)
 - folding in and out [54](#)
- External devices [180](#)
 - random play [183](#)
- Eyes
 - for lashing loads [126](#)
 - for tow-starting and towing away [258](#)
- F**
- Failure message, see Check Control [86](#)
- Failure of an electrical consumer [255](#)
- False alarms, avoiding [37](#)
- Fan, see Air flow rate [109](#)
- Fasten seat belts, see Seat belts [52](#)
- Fastest route in navigation [146](#)
- Fault
 - door lock [34](#)
 - fuel filler flap [228](#)
- Fault messages, see Check Control [86](#)
- Favourites buttons [22](#)
- Filler neck for washer fluid [74](#)
- Filling capacities [271](#)
- Filter for automatic air-conditioning system, see Micro-filter/activated charcoal filter [110](#)
- Filtering traffic information [152](#)
- Final drive, running in [122](#)
- First aid pouch [257](#)
- Fixture for remote control, see Ignition lock [62](#)
- Flashing turn indicators [73](#)
 - bulb changing [251](#)
 - indicator lamp [12](#)
- Flashing when locking/unlocking [33](#)
- Flat tyre
 - run Flat Indicator [93](#)
- Flat tyre, see Condition of tyres [230](#)
- Flat tyre, see Run Flat Indicator [94](#)
- Flooding, see Driving through water [124](#)
- Fog lights [104](#)
 - indicator lamp [13](#)
- Footbrake, see Safe braking [124](#)
- Footwell lights [105](#)
- Forward
 - CD player [170](#)
- For your own safety [5](#)
- Free capacity, music collection [178](#)
- Front airbags [96](#)
- Front fog light [104](#)
- Front passenger airbags
 - deactivating [56](#)
 - reactivating [57](#)
- Front seat adjustment [48](#)
- Frost protection
 - coolant [241](#)
 - washer fluid [74](#)
- Fuel [229](#)
 - additives [229](#)
 - fuel gauge [78](#)
 - grade [229](#)
 - tank capacity, see Filling capacities [271](#)
- Fuel, leaded [229](#)
- Fuel consumption indicator, see Average fuel consumption [79](#)
- Fuel filler flap [228](#)
 - unlocking in the event of an electrical fault [228](#)
- Fuel level [78](#)
- Fuel statistics, see Average fuel consumption [79](#)
- Fuses [255](#)

G

- Gearbox
 - Launch Control 72
 - neutral 70
 - reverse 70
 - unlocking the transmission lockout manually 71
- Gear changes 70
- Gear display, see Displays in the instrument cluster 69
- Gear indicator, for automatic transmission 66
- Gearshift lever
 - automatic transmission with Steptronic 67
 - manual gearbox 66
- Gearshift point display 80
- Gearshifts
 - with automatic transmission 67
 - with manual gearbox 66
- Gearstick 69
- General care 245
 - alloy wheels 247
 - care products 246
 - carpets 247
 - car washes 245
 - chrome parts 247
 - convertible top 248
 - displays 248
 - fine wood trims 247
 - headlights 246
 - leather 246
 - paintwork 246
 - plastic parts 247
 - rubber seals 247
 - seat belts 247
 - sensors and cameras 248
- General driving notes 124
- Glass roof, electric 41
 - convenient operation with Comfort Access 38
 - opening, closing 41
 - raising 41
 - remote control 32
 - trap protection 42

- Glove compartment 112
- GPS navigation, see Navigation system 134
- Grilles, see Air outlets 107
- Gross weight, see Weights 267
- Ground lights 105
- Guided tours 145

H

- Halogen headlights
 - bulb changing 250
 - driving on left/right 105
 - manual headlight beam throw adjustment 102
- Handbrake 65
 - indicator lamp 65
- Hands-free unit 199
- Hands-free unit, see Microphone for hands-free telephony 14
- Hazard warning flashers 14
- Head-level airbags 96
- Headlight adjustment, see Rule of the road 105
- Headlight beam throw adjustment 102
 - automatic for xenon headlights 102
- Headlight courtesy delay feature 101
- Headlight cover 250
- Headlight flasher 73
 - indicator lamp 13
- Headlights
 - bulb changing 250
- Head restraints 50
- Heated mirrors 54
- Heating
 - mirrors 54
 - seats 52
 - steering wheel 55
- Heating, rear window 110
- Heating and ventilation 107
- Heavy loads, see Loading 126
- Height, see Dimensions 265

- Height adjustment
 - steering wheel 55
- High beam assistance 103
- High-beam headlights 103
 - bulb changing 250
 - indicator lamp 13
- High beams and low beams, automatic, see High beam assistance 103
- High-pressure cleaners 245
- Hints for driving, see Driving hints 122
- Holder for drinks 113
- Holder for telephone or mobile
 - phone, see Snap-in adapter 201
- Hot exhaust system 124
- Hotline 221
- Hydraulic brake assist, see Dynamic Brake Control 91

I

- Ice warning, see Outside temperature warning 77
- iDrive 18
 - adjusting brightness 89
 - changing language 89
 - date and time, setting 85
 - menu guidance 19
 - operating principle 18
 - status information 21
- Ignition 63
 - switched off 63
 - switched on 63
- Ignition key, see Integrated key/remote control 30
- Ignition key position 1, see Radio readiness 63
- Ignition key position 2, see Ignition on 63
- Ignition lock 62
- Importing trips 144
- Incoming call 195

- Independent ventilation system [110](#)
- preselecting switch-on times [111](#)
 - switching on and off directly [111](#)
- Indicator and warning lamps [13](#)
- Indicators, see Flashing turn indicators [73](#)
- Individual settings, see Personal Profile [30](#)
- Inflation pressure, tyres [230](#)
- Inflation pressure monitoring, see Run Flat Indicator [93](#)
- Info display, see Instrument cluster [12](#)
- Information service [215](#)
- Initialising
- radio, see Memorising stations [162](#)
 - see Setting time and date [85](#)
- Initialising, Run Flat Indicator RPA [93](#)
- Input map for destination [141](#)
- Inside mirror [54](#)
- automatic-dim [54](#)
- Instructions from navigation system, see Spoken instructions [148](#)
- Instrument cluster [12](#)
- Instrument cluster, see Cockpit [10](#)
- Instrument lighting [105](#)
- Integrated key [30](#)
- Interactive map [142](#)
- Interior light [105](#)
- remote control [33](#)
- Interior movement detector [37](#)
- Intermittent wiper operation [74](#)
- Internet [219](#)
- ISOFIX child seat mountings [58](#)
- ## J
- Jack [254](#)
- mounting points [254](#)
- Joystick, see iDrive [18](#)
- Jump-starting, see Starting with a flat battery [257](#)
- ## K
- Kerb weight, see Weights [267](#)
- Key, see Integrated key/remote control [30](#)
- Keyless Go, see Comfort Access [38](#)
- Keyless locking and unlocking, see Comfort Access [38](#)
- Key Memory, see Personal Profile [30](#)
- Key switch for front passenger airbags [56](#)
- Kick-down [67](#)
- Knock control [229](#)
- KW, wave range [161](#)
- ## L
- Language, altering on the control display [89](#)
- Lap-and-shoulder seat belt [52](#)
- Lashings, see Securing the load [126](#)
- Last destinations [139](#)
- Launch Control [72](#)
- Leaded fuel [229](#)
- Leather care [246](#)
- LED light-emitting diodes [249](#)
- Left-hand traffic [105](#)
- Length, see Dimensions [265](#)
- Licence plate light, bulb changing [253](#)
- Light-emitting diodes LED [249](#)
- Lighter [114](#)
- Lighting
- instrument lighting [105](#)
 - instruments [105](#)
 - lights and bulbs [249](#)
 - vehicle, see Lights [100](#)
- Lights
- adaptive Headlights [102](#)
 - interior [105](#)
 - see High beam assistance [103](#)
- Lights, see Side lights/low-beam headlights [100](#)
- Lights and bulbs, bulb change [249](#)
- Light switch [100](#)
- Limit, see Speed limit [88](#)
- List in navigation, see Address book [138](#)
- Load area, see Luggage compartment
- Loads
- loading [126](#)
 - securing [126](#)
 - trailer [127](#)
 - vehicle [125](#)
- Load-securing equipment, see Securing the load [126](#)
- Lockable wheel studs, see Thief-proof wheel studs [254](#)
- Locking
- adjusting confirmation signal [33](#)
 - from inside [35](#)
 - from outside [32](#)
 - without remote control, see Comfort Access [38](#)
- Low-beam headlights [100](#)
- automatic [100](#)
 - bulb changing [250](#)
- Low fuel level warning lamp [78](#)
- Luggage area, see Luggage compartment

Luggage area lid [35](#)
 – Comfort Access [39](#)
 – emergency release [36](#)
 – opening from outside [35](#)
 – unlocking with remote control [33](#)

Luggage compartment
 – Comfort Access [39](#)
 – expanding, see Through-loading system [115](#)
 – lid, see Luggage area lid [35](#)
 – light, see Interior lights [105](#)
 – opening from outside [35](#)

Luggage compartment lid, see Luggage area lid [35](#)

Luggage compartment net, see Securing the load [126](#)

Luggage rack, see Roof rack [127](#)

Lumbar support [49](#)

M

M+S tyres, see Winter tyres [232](#)

Maintenance, see
 – BMW Maintenance System [243](#)
 – Service Booklet

Maintenance system [243](#)

Managing contact data [211](#)

Managing music [177](#)

Manual gearbox [66](#)

Manual mode of automatic transmission [67](#)

Manual operation
 – door lock [34](#)
 – fuel filler flap [228](#)
 – parking lock [71](#)
 – transmission lock, automatic transmission [68](#)

Map for navigation
 – changing scale [150](#)
 – destination input [141](#)

Map view [149](#)

Master key, see Integrated key/remote control [30](#)

Maximum cooling effect [108](#)

Maximum speed
 – for winter tyres [232](#)

Memorising
 – seat position, see Seat and mirror memory [52](#)

Menus, see iDrive [18](#)

Message from information service [208](#)

Messages [206](#)

Micro-filter/activated charcoal filter for automatic air-conditioning system [110](#)

Microphone for telephone [14](#)

Mirrors [53](#)
 – exterior mirrors [53](#)
 – heating [54](#)
 – inside mirror [54](#)
 – parking position function [54](#)

Mobile phone
 – adjusting volume [195](#)
 – connecting, see Pairing a mobile phone [191](#)
 – operation [195](#)
 – pairing [191](#)
 – suitable mobile phones [190](#)
 – unpairing [194](#)
 – What to do if... [194](#)

Mobile phone, installed position, see Centre armrest [112](#)

Mobile phone, see Telephone [190](#)

Mobility System [233](#)
 – adjusting the tyre pressure [235](#)
 – compressor [233](#)
 – distributing sealant [235](#)
 – filling sealant [234](#)
 – preparation [233](#)
 – resuming the journey [236](#)
 – sealant [233](#)
 – using [233](#)

Modifications, technical, see For your own safety [5](#)

Monitor, see iDrive [18](#)

Monitoring tyre pressures, see Run Flat Indicator [93](#)

Motorways, see Route criteria [146](#)

Multichannel playback [159](#)

Multifunctional steering wheel, see Buttons on steering wheel [11](#)

Multi-function lever
 – see Flashing turn indicators/headlight flasher [73](#)

Multifunction switch
 – see Wiper system [73](#)

Music collection [174](#)
 – random play [177](#)

Music interface for smartphones [181](#)

Music memory [174](#)

Music search [175](#)

MW, wave range [161](#)

My Info [207](#)

N

Navigation
 – memorise current position [138](#)
 – starting route guidance after destination input [138](#)
 – voice control [142](#)

Navigation announcements, see Switching spoken instructions on/off [148](#)

Navigation data [134](#)

Navigation system [134](#)
– address book [138](#)
– adjusting volume [148](#)
– avoiding sections of a route [147](#)
– continuing route guidance [146](#)
– destination input [136](#)
– dynamic route guidance [153](#)
– entering a destination address manually [136](#)
– entering a destination via voice control system [142](#)
– exiting route guidance [146](#)
– planning a trip [143](#)
– points of interest [139](#)
– questions regarding the system [154](#)
– refuelling recommendation [148](#)
– route list [147](#)
– selecting destination from map [141](#)
– selecting route criteria [146](#)
– spoken instructions [148](#)
– starting route guidance [146](#)
– traffic information [151](#)
Neck restraints, see Head restraints [50](#)
Nets, see Storage compartments [113](#)
Neutral [70](#)
New tyres [231](#)
Next Service indicator, see Condition Based Service CBS [243](#)
North, direction of, in map view [149](#)
Nose weight [127](#), [269](#)
Notes [210](#)
Nozzles, see Air outlets [107](#)
Nozzles, see Ventilation [110](#)

O

OBd socket, see Socket for on-board diagnosis [244](#)
Octane numbers, see Fuel grade [229](#)
Odometer [77](#)
Office [203](#)
– office today [203](#)
Oil, see Engine oil [238](#)
Oil consumption [238](#)
Oil level [238](#)
Old batteries, see Disposal [255](#)
On-board computer
– displays on the control display [79](#)
On-board computer, see Computer [79](#)
On-board toolkit [249](#)
Opening, see Unlocking [32](#)
Opening and closing
– Comfort Access [38](#)
– from inside [34](#)
– from the outside [32](#)
– via the door lock [34](#)
– via the remote control [32](#)
Opening without a key, see Comfort Access [38](#)
Orientation menu, see Start menu [19](#)
Outlets, see Air outlets [107](#)
Outside air, see Recirculated-air mode [109](#)
Outside mirrors
– adjusting [53](#)
– automatic-dim [54](#)
– towing a trailer [128](#)
Outside temperature display [77](#)
– changing units of measure [82](#)
– in computer [82](#)
Outside temperature warning [77](#)
Overriding selector-lever lock [68](#)

P

Paintwork paint [246](#)
Park Distance Control PDC [90](#)
Parking aid, see Park Distance Control PDC [90](#)
Parking assistant, see Park Distance Control [90](#)
Parking brake, see Handbrake [65](#)
Parking lights [103](#)
– bulb changing [251](#)
Parking position function [54](#)
Particle filter, see Diesel particle filter [124](#)
Passenger-side mirror tilt-down [54](#)
PDC Park Distance Control [90](#)
Pedestrian protection system, active [97](#)
Penetration of water [245](#)
Personal information, see Office [203](#)
Personal Profile [30](#)
Petrol, see Fuel grade [229](#)
Phone [190](#)
– incoming calls [198](#)
– phone book [197](#)
– redial [198](#)
Phone call
– ending [196](#)
Phone number
– dialling [196](#)
Phone receiving power, see Status information [21](#)
Placing a call, see Dialling a phone number [196](#)
Placing in storage [248](#)
Placing the vehicle in storage [248](#)
Plasters, see First aid pouch [257](#)
Playing music [175](#)
Points for positioning jack [254](#)
Points of interest [139](#)
Polish [247](#)

Pollen, see Micro-filter/
activated charcoal filter **110**

Preheating, see Diesel
engine **64**

Prescribed engine oils, see
Approved engine oils **241**

Preselecting switch-on times
for the independent
ventilation system **111**

Pressure, tyres **230**

Programmable buttons on
steering wheel **11**

Protective function, see Trap
protection

- glass roof, electric **42**
- windows **41**

Pullaway assistance, see
DSC **91**

Punctures

- run-flat tyres **232**

R

Radio

- controls **158**
- DAB/DMB **165**
- memorising stations **162**
- regional programmes **163**
- select wave range **161**
- switching on/off **158**
- tone settings **158**
- traffic reports **163**
- volume control **158**

Radio key, see Integrated key/
Remote control **30**

Radio position, see Radio
readiness **63**

Radio readiness **63**

- switched off **63**
- switched on **63**

Rain sensor **74**

Random play

- external devices **183**

Random play, Random

- CD player **169**
- music collection **177**

Range **79**

Rapeseed methyl ester
RME **229**

Reading lights **106**

Reading out **211**

Rear fog lights **104**

- bulb changing **253**
- indicator lamp **13**

Rear lights **252**

- bulb changing **253**

Rear seats

- adjusting head restraints **50**
- folding backrest **115**

Rear-view mirror, see
Mirrors **53**

Rear window heating **110**

Reception

- quality **162**
- radio stations **162**
- traffic reports **163**

Recirculated air, see
Recirculated-air mode **109**

Recirculated-air mode **109**

Recirculation of air, see
Recirculated-air mode **109**

Recycling **244**

Redialling **198**

Reflecting tail lights, see Rear
lights **252**

Refuelling **228**

Refuelling
recommendation **148**

Regional programmes on
radio **163**

Releasing

- engine compartment lid **238**

Remaining distance, see On-
board computer **79**

Reminders **210**

Remote control

- changing the battery **39**
- Comfort Access **38**
- faults **34, 39**
- luggage area lid **33**
- removing from the ignition
lock **62**
- service data **243**

Remote control,
replacement **30**

Remote key **30**

Repairing a flat tyre **232**

Reporting an accident, see
Emergency call **256**

Reserve warning, see Fuel
gauge **78**

Reservoir for cleaning
systems **74**

Reset, see reset tone
settings **160**

Residual distance, see
Range **79**

Restoring music
collection **179**

Restraint systems, see Seat
belts **52**

Restraint systems for
children **56**

Retreaded tyres **231**

Returning end-of-life vehicles,
see Recycling **244**

Reverse **70**

- CD player **170**

Reverse gear

- automatic transmission with
Steptronic **67**
- manual gearbox **66**

Reversing lights, bulb
changing **253**

Revolution counter **78**

RME rapeseed methyl
ester **229**

Road map **149**

Roadworthiness test, see
Next Service indicator **82**

Rollover protection system for
Convertible **98**

- retracting **98**

RON, see Fuel grade **229**

Roof load **267**

Roof rack **127**

Rope, see Tow-starting and
towing away **260**

Rotary/push-button control,
see Controller **18**

- Route [146](#)
 - altering criteria [146](#)
 - avoiding sections [147](#)
 - changing [146, 147](#)
 - displaying map view [149](#)
 - displaying streets and towns/cities [147](#)
 - selecting [146](#)
 - Route guidance [146](#)
 - altering route specifications [146](#)
 - avoiding sections of a route [147](#)
 - continuing [146](#)
 - spoken instructions [148](#)
 - starting [146](#)
 - volume of spoken instructions [148](#)
 - Route instructions, see Route guidance by spoken instructions [148](#)
 - Route map, see Displaying map view [149](#)
 - Route selection [146](#)
 - RPA, see Run Flat Indicator RPA [93](#)
 - RSC Runflat System
 - Component, see Run-flat tyres [232](#)
 - Rule of the road, headlight adjustment [105](#)
 - Run Flat Indicator RPA [93](#)
 - indicating a flat tyre [94](#)
 - initialising the system [93](#)
 - system limits [93](#)
 - Runflat System Component RSC, see Run-flat tyres [232](#)
 - Run-flat tyres [232](#)
 - flat tyre [94](#)
 - new tyres [231](#)
 - remaining distance, see Indicating a flat tyre [94](#)
 - replacing tyres [231](#)
 - tyre pressure [230](#)
 - winter tyres [232](#)
 - RunFlat Tyres, see Run-flat tyres [232](#)
 - Running in [122](#)
- ## S
- Safe seated position
 - airbags [47](#)
 - seat belts [47](#)
 - Safety lock buttons on doors, see Locking [35](#)
 - Safety systems
 - airbags [96](#)
 - Anti-lock Brake System ABS [91](#)
 - Dynamic Stability Control DSC [91](#)
 - rollover protection system, Convertible [98](#)
 - seat belts [52](#)
 - Safety tyres, see Run-flat tyres [232](#)
 - Saving a trip [144](#)
 - Saving energy
 - automatic start/stop function [64](#)
 - gearshift point display [80](#)
 - saving fuel [122](#)
 - Saving fuel [122](#)
 - Screen, see iDrive [18](#)
 - Screw thread for towing eye [258](#)
 - Seat and mirror memory [52](#)
 - Seat-belt height adjustment [53](#)
 - Seat belt reminder, see 'Fasten seat belts' reminder [53](#)
 - Seat belts [52](#)
 - 'Fasten seat belts' reminder [53](#)
 - damage [53](#)
 - indicator lamp [53](#)
 - safe seated position [47](#)
 - Seats [48](#)
 - heating [52](#)
 - sitting safely [47](#)
 - Sections of route, changing [147](#)
 - Securing the load [116, 118, 126](#)
 - see Loads [126](#)
 - Selecting a station
 - Radio [161](#)
 - Selecting station
 - DAB [165](#)
 - Selecting the route [146](#)
 - Selection options for navigation [146](#)
 - Selector lever, automatic transmission with Steptronic [67](#)
 - Service [243](#)
 - Service, see BMW Roadside Assistance [257](#)
 - Service data in remote control [243](#)
 - Service Interval indicator, see Condition Based Service CBS [243](#)
 - Service partners [222](#)
 - Service requirements [82](#)
 - Service status [222](#)
 - Service vehicle, see BMW Roadside Assistance [257](#)
 - Settings
 - clock, 12-hour/24-hour mode [85](#)
 - date format [86](#)
 - DVD [171](#)
 - language [89](#)
 - Settings for map view [150](#)
 - Setting time, see Preselecting switch-on times [111](#)
 - Shift-buttons on the steering wheel, see Shift paddles [70](#)
 - Shifting [70](#)
 - 7-gear sports automatic transmission with double clutch [70, 71](#)
 - Shifting with automatic transmission with Steptronic [67](#)
 - Shiftlock, see Moving the selector lever [67](#)

- Shift paddles on the steering wheel [70](#)
- Short commands for the voice control system [272](#)
- Short route in navigation, see Selecting a route [146](#)
- Side airbags [96](#)
- Side lights/low-beam headlights [100](#)
 - bulb changing [251](#)
- Side windows, see Windows [40](#)
- Signal horn, see Horn [10](#)
- Sitting safely [47](#)
- Ski bag [116](#)
- Slipstream deflector [45](#)
- Slot for remote control [62](#)
- Smokers' package, see Ashtray [114](#)
- SMS [207](#)
- Snap-in adapter [190](#)
 - inserting/removing [201](#)
- Snap-in adapter, see Centre armrest [112](#)
- Snow chains [236](#)
- Socket, see Connecting electrical appliances [114](#)
- Socket for on-board diagnosis OBD [244](#)
- Software update [186](#)
- Soot particle filter, see Diesel particle filter [124](#)
- Sound
 - middle setting [160](#)
- Spare fuses [255](#)
 - see Fuses [255](#)
- Special oils, see Approved engine oils [241](#)
- Speed
 - for winter tyres [232](#)
 - when towing a trailer [128](#)
- Speedometer [12](#)
- Speed Volume [159](#)
- Split screen content, see Selecting the display for split screen content [22](#)
- Spoken instructions for navigation system [148](#)
 - repeating [148](#)
 - switching on/off [148](#)
 - volume control [148](#)
- Sport programme, automatic transmission with Steptronic [67](#)
- Sport programme with the 7-gear sports automatic transmission with double clutch [70](#)
- Sports automatic transmission with double clutch [68](#)
 - Dynamic Driving Control [71](#)
 - kick-down [70](#)
 - Launch Control [72](#)
 - neutral [70](#)
 - reverse gear [70](#)
 - transmission lockout, unlocking manually [71](#)
- Stability control, see Driving stability control systems [91](#)
- Start/stop button [62](#)
 - starting the engine [63](#)
 - switching off the engine [64](#)
- Starting on uphill gradients, see Drive-off assistant [93](#)
- Starting the engine
 - start/stop button [62](#)
- Starting with a flat battery [257](#)
- Start menu [19](#)
- Station search
 - DAB [165](#)
- Status at time of printing [5](#)
- Status information on the control display [21](#)
- Steam-jet cleaners [245](#)
- Steering wheel [55](#)
 - adjusting [55](#)
 - buttons on steering wheel [11](#)
 - heating [55](#)
 - lock [62](#)
 - shift paddles [70](#)
- Steering with variable gear ratio, see Active steering [95](#)
- Steptronic, see Automatic transmission with Steptronic [66](#)
- Stop light, see Rear lights [252](#)
 - bulb changing [253](#)
- Stopping
 - car [64](#)
 - engine [64](#)
- Storage compartments [113](#)
- Storage package [113](#)
- Storing a destination in the address book [138](#)
- Storing tyres [232](#)
- Stowage, see Storage compartments [113](#)
- Suitable mobile phones [190](#)
- Summer tyres, see Wheels and tyres [230](#)
- Sun roof, see Glass roof, electric [41](#)
- Surround [159](#)
- SVCD [170](#)
- Switches, see Cockpit [10](#)
- Switch for front passenger airbags [56](#)
- Switching audio output for entertainment systems on/off [158](#)
- Switching cooling function on and off [110](#)
- Switching off the engine
 - start/stop button [62](#)
- Switching on/off
 - Audio [158](#)
 - CD player [158](#)
 - radio [158](#)
- Symbols [4](#)
 - status information [21](#)

T

Tailgate, see Luggage area lid [35](#)

Tail lights, see Rear lights [252](#)

- Tank capacity, see Filling capacities 271
- Tasks 210
- Technical data 264
- Technical modifications 5
- Telephone
 - hands-free unit 199
 - voice control 199
- Telephone, installed position, see Centre armrest 112
- Teleservice Call 221
- Teleservice Diagnosis 216
- Teleservice Help 217
- Temperature adjustment 108
- Temperature display
 - outside temperature 77
 - outside temperature warning 77
 - setting unit of measurement 82
- Tempomat, see Cruise control 75
- Theft protection for wheel studs, see Thief-proof wheel studs 254
- Thief-proof wheel studs 254
- Thigh support 48
- Third brake light, see Centre brake light 253
- Through-loading system 115
- Tilt alarm sensor 37
- Timer, see Preselecting switch-on times 111
- TMC stations, see Traffic information 151
- Tone
 - settings 158
- Tools, see On-board toolkit 249
- Top 50 on music collection 176
- Top speed
 - when towing a trailer 128
- To set the sound when using the audio system, see tone settings 158
- Towbar 259
- Towing
 - with 7-gear sports automatic transmission with double clutch 259
- Towing a trailer 127
- Towing away 258
 - cars with automatic transmission 258
 - methods 259
- Towing eye 258
- Towing eyes for tow-starting and towing away 258
- Tow rope 260
- Tow-starting 258
- TP function 163
- Track
 - selection on a CD 168
- Traffic information
 - categories 152
- Traffic information during navigation
 - representation in the map view 151
- Traffic information for navigation 151
 - during route guidance 152
- Traffic jam
 - switching traffic reports on 163
- Traffic reports 163
 - TP 163
 - volume control 164
- Trailer pulling, see Towing a trailer 127
- Trailer tow hitch 129
- Trailer towing
 - towing loads and gross weight 269
- Transmission
 - 7-gear sports automatic transmission with double clutch 68
 - automatic transmission with Steptronic 66
 - manual gearbox 66
- Transmission positions 69
- Transport securing equipment, see Securing the load 126
- Trap protection
 - glass roof, electric 42
 - windows 41
- Tread depth, see Minimum tread depth 230
- Trip distance recorder 77
- Triple turn signal 73
- Turn indicators
 - triple turn signal 73
- Turning circle, see Dimensions 265
- Tyre changing, see New wheels and tyres 231
- Tyre pressure
 - for trailer towing 230
 - loss 94
- Tyre pressure monitoring, see Run Flat Indicator 93
- Tyre pressures 230
- Tyres
 - age 231
 - changing, see Changing a wheel 253
 - condition 230
 - damage 230, 231
 - flat tyre 94
 - minimum tread depth 230
 - new 231
 - pressure monitoring, see Run Flat Indicator 93
 - pressures 230
 - retreaded 231
 - run-flat tyres 232
 - running in 122
 - size 230
 - wear indicators, see Minimum tread depth 231
 - winter tyres 232

U

- UKW, wave range [161](#)
- Underseal, see General care [245](#)
- Units of measurement
 - average fuel consumption [82](#)
 - temperature [82](#)
- Unlocking
 - from outside [32](#)
 - luggage area lid [39](#)
 - without remote control, see Comfort Access [38](#)
- Unlocking and locking doors
 - from inside [34, 35](#)
 - from outside [32](#)
- Unlocking the transmission
 - lockout manually [71](#)
- Updating navigation data [134](#)
- Updating software [186](#)
- USB audio interface [181](#)
- USB interface [112](#)

V

- VCD [170](#)
- Vehicle
 - battery [254](#)
 - dimensions [265](#)
 - identification Number, see Engine compartment [237](#)
 - laying up, see Laying up car out of use [248](#)
 - loads [125](#)
 - returning, see Recycling [244](#)
 - running in [122](#)
- Vehicle battery [254](#)
- Vehicle care, see General care [245](#)
- Vehicle equipment [5](#)
- Vehicle phone, see Telephone [190](#)
- Vehicle radio, see Radio [161](#)

- Vehicle recycling, see Recycling [244](#)
- Ventilating, see Ventilation [110](#)
- Ventilation [110](#)
 - draught-free [110](#)
- Ventilation while parked, see Independent ventilation system [110](#)
- Video menu [170](#)
- Video playback [170, 183](#)
- Voice, see Route guidance by spoken instructions [148](#)
- Voice-activated phone
 - book [200](#)
- Voice control
 - overview [24](#)
 - short commands [272](#)
 - telephone [199](#)
- Volume
 - mobile phone [195](#)
- Volume control [158](#)
 - audio sources [158](#)
 - spoken instructions [148](#)
 - traffic reports [164](#)

W

- Warning and indicator lamps [13](#)
- Warning messages, see Check Control [86](#)
- Warning triangle [257](#)
- Washer fluid [74](#)
 - reservoir capacity [75](#)
- Washer jets, see Windscreen washer jets [74](#)
- Waste tray, see Ashtray [114](#)
- Water on roads, see Driving through water [124](#)
- Wave range for radio [161](#)
- Wear indicators in the tyres, see Minimum tread depth [231](#)

- Welcome lights [101](#)
- What to do if ... [211](#)
- Wheelbase, see Dimensions [265](#)
- Wheels, new [231](#)
- Wheels and tyres [230](#)
- Wheelslip control, see Dynamic Stability Control DSC [91](#)
- Width, see Dimensions [265](#)
- Window defrosting, see Defrosting windows [109](#)
- Windows [40](#)
 - convenient operation [32](#)
 - convenient operation with Comfort Access [38](#)
 - opening, closing [40](#)
 - trap protection [41](#)
- Window washer system [73](#)
 - washer fluid [74](#)
 - washer jets [74](#)
- Windscreen
 - cleaning [74](#)
 - defrosting [109](#)
- Windscreen cleaning
 - reservoir, see Filler neck for washer fluid [74](#)
- Windscreen wiper blades,
 - changing [249](#)
- Winter tyres [232](#)
 - speed limit [88](#)
 - tyre storage [232](#)
- Wiper system [73](#)
- Wrench/screwdriver, see Toolkit [249](#)

X

- Xenon headlights [102](#)
 - automatic headlight beam throw adjustment [102](#)
 - bulb changing [250](#)
 - driving on left/right [105](#)

More about BMW



The Ultimate
Driving Machine

www.bmw.com

01 40 2 918 465 en iDrive

